

**hugo**

# SCOTTISH GAELOWIC

## in THREE MONTHS



SIMPLIFIED LANGUAGE COURSE



## A DORLING KINDERSLEY BOOK

This new and enlarged edition published in Great Britain in 1998 by Hugo's Language Books, an imprint of Dorling Kindersley Limited, 9 Henrietta Street, London WC2E 8PS

Visit us on the World Wide Web at [www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

Copyright 1996, 1998 © Dorling Kindersley Ltd  
2 4 6 8 10 9 7 5 3 1

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record is available from the British Library.

ISBN 0 85285 369 6

*Scottish Gaelic in Three Months* is also available in a pack with two cassettes, ISBN 0 85285 370 X

Written by

Roibeard Ó Maolalaigh B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Lecturer, Department of Celtic and  
Director, Centre for Irish Studies  
University of Edinburgh

with

Iain MacAonghuis M.A., Ph.D. (Consultant)  
Honorary Fellow (formerly Senior Lecturer)  
University of Edinburgh

Edited by

Jenny Yoboué

Set in 10/12pt Plantin by  
Keyset Composition, Colchester  
Printed and bound by LegoPrint, Italy

## Contents

### Preface vii

### Pronunciation 1

#### Lesson 1 12

Pronouns

'Tha' (to be)

Indefinite nouns

'There is'/'There are'

'To have'

Prepositional pronouns: 'aig' (at)

'To know'

Negative/Interrogative forms of 'tha'

Answering questions

'I only have'

Adverbs

'How are you?'

Vocabulary, exercises & conversation

#### Lesson 2 19

Emphatic pronouns

'Who are you?'

'To be' – 'Is' v. 'tha'

Negative/Interrogative forms of verb

'Is'

Gender

Pronouns 'fear' & 'té' (one)

Case in Gaelic

Definite article: nominative

Use of article

Possessive constructions

Position & status of adjectives

Vocabulary, exercises & conversation

#### Lesson 3 31

Verbal nouns

Present tense: 'tha' + verbal noun

Asking 'What ...?'

Definite nouns

More on 'is' (to be)

Demonstratives: adjectives,  
pronouns, adverbs

Asking 'Where is ...?'

Numerals 0–19

Adverbs of direction

Days, months, seasons

Emphatic suffixes/pronouns

Vocabulary, exercises & conversation

#### Lesson 4 47

Past tense of 'tha' (to be)

Independent/dependent verbal forms:

Past tense of 'tha'

Irregular verbs: simple past

Answering questions (past tense)

Imperative

Past tense of 'is'

Idioms with 'is'

Prepositional pronouns: 'do' (to, for)

Idioms with 'do'

Vocative (address form)

Reflexive pronoun 'fhéin' (self)

Adverbial use of 'fhéin'

#### Lesson 5 62

Preposition 'ann an' (in) & idiomatic  
use

More on use of 'is'

Negative/question forms of 'se'

Using 'tha' instead of 'is'

'It is'/'This is'/'That is'

Asking 'What is ...?'

Word order: fronting

Answering questions beginning with  
'an e', 'nach e' / 'an ann', 'nach  
ann'

Ownership

Prepositional pronoun 'le' (with) &  
idiomatic use

The weather

Prepositions	Irregular nouns: plural
Prepositional pronoun 'air' (on) & idiomatic use	Numerals with nouns
Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	Dual number
<b>Lesson 6 78</b>	Verbal nouns with pronoun objects
The prepositional case	Vocabulary, exercises & conversation
Preposition + nominative	
Regular verbs: past tense (independent forms)	
More prepositional pronouns: 'ri', 'do'	
Verbs & prepositions	
Regular verbs: past tense (dependent forms)	
'Never'/'ever'/'only'	
Independent/Dependent verbal particles	
'Who?' v. 'who', etc.	
Telling the time	
Other times of the year	
'Last', 'next'	
'Eigin' (some), 'feadhain' (some people/things), 'A h-uile' (every)	
Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<b>Lesson 7 94</b>	
The genitive case	
Irregular nouns	
The genitive of the article (singular)	
Surnames	
Adverbs of quantity	
Verbal noun & genitive	
Composite prepositions	
Prepositions + genitive	
More on time	
Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<b>Lesson 8 110</b>	
The future of 'tha'	
Regular verbs: future	
Answering questions (future)	
Conjunctions	
'Never', 'ever'	
The plural: nominative & genitive	
The plural form of the article	
<b>Lesson 9 127</b>	
Irregular verbs: future	
The relative	
Interrogatives with prepositions	
Relative of 'is'	
Adjectives: singular, prepositional, genitive	
Numerals 20–99	
Numerals with nouns	
Age	
Use of 'de' (of)	
Countries	
Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<b>Lesson 10 145</b>	
Regular verbs: conditional/past habitual	
'Tha' (conditional) & answering questions	
'If', 'if not', 'if it were not for', 'whether/if'	
Comparison of adjectives	
'That' – linking clauses & reported speech	
Plural of adjectives	
Personal numerals	
Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<b>Lesson 11 162</b>	
Modal verbs	
Infinitives	
Inversion	
The perfect tenses	
'Ri' + noun	
'Gu' + verbal noun	
Colours	
Ordinal numbers	
Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	

<b>Lesson 12 176</b>	
Irregular verbs: conditional/past habitual	
Idiom 'is àbhaist do' (usually)	
Used to	
Past particles & the perfective	
The passive	
Independent/dependent impersonal forms	
The subjunctive	
Defective verbs	
Interjections	
More prepositional pronouns	
Vocabulary, exercises & conversation	
<b>Appendices 193</b>	
(1) Vowel changes with slenderisation	
(2) Complete list of prepositional pronouns	
(3) Complete list of forms of the article	
(4) Nasalisation	
(5) Examples of regular verb 'mol' 'praise'	
<b>Reading Practice 200</b>	
<b>Key to exercises 207</b>	
<b>Index 213</b>	
<b>Mini-dictionary 215</b>	

## Abbreviations used in this book

<i>adj</i>	adjective	<i>irreg</i>	irregular
<i>adv</i>	adverb	<i>lit</i>	literally
<i>attr</i>	attributive	<i>m</i>	masculine
<i>cjn</i>	conjunction	<i>obj</i>	object
<i>DEP</i>	dependent	<i>p</i>	prepositional
<i>f</i>	feminine	<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>fam</i>	familiar	<i>pred</i>	predicate
<i>INDEP</i>	independent	<i>sing</i>	singular
<i>IPA</i>	International Phonetic Association	<i>subj</i>	subject
		<i>vb</i>	verb

## Preface

*Scottish Gaelic in Three Months* has been written both as a self-tuition course for beginners and also for use within the classroom. You may want to learn Gaelic because of a general interest in Celtic or Scottish history and culture, or because it was the everyday language of your ancestors before they emigrated – perhaps to Nova Scotia, where, on Cape Breton Island, Gaelic speakers may still be found. The cynical observer may wonder if the exercise is worthwhile, when only one and a half per cent of Scotland's population speak the language. However, Gaelic is far from being dead; in some parts of the Highlands and Western Isles it is the everyday language, and it represents an important part of the United Kingdom's cultural 'mix'. There are Gaelic-learning classes in almost every area of Scotland.

Roibeard Ó Maolalaigh organises Beginners' Gaelic Courses at the University of Edinburgh, where he lectures in the Department of Celtic and is Director of the Centre for Irish Studies. His consultant Iain MacAonghuis is a native speaker of Scottish Gaelic who was born and brought up in the Western Isles. He lectured for many years at the School of Scottish Studies, University of Edinburgh (where he is now an Honorary Fellow), and has written and broadcast on a range of Gaelic subjects.

Each lesson in *Scottish Gaelic in Three Months* contains some essential points of grammar explained and illustrated, exercises, a list of new vocabulary (with a guide to pronunciation, in International Phonetics notation), and an item of conversation. Ideally, you should spend about an hour a day on the course, although this is by no means a firm rule. Do as much as you feel capable of doing at a particular time; it is much better to learn a little at a time, and to learn that thoroughly, than to force yourself beyond your daily capacity to absorb new material. Spend the first ten minutes of a daily session revising what you learned the day before.

When you have completed our course on modern, everyday Gaelic, you should have a good understanding of this wonderful language.

## Gaelic: an introductory note

Scottish Gaelic has a standard orthography but otherwise tolerates quite a wide diversity. Local pronunciation and inflection are perfectly acceptable though often with the qualification that the native speaker tends to regard the speech of his or her own area as the most pleasing. Syntactical variation is minimal among the dialects of the language with phonological variation showing the greatest divergence.

Learners sometimes find this flexibility confusing at the start but soon realise it is essentially no different from the acceptance, say, of American, Australian or West Indian varieties of English as having equal status in pronunciation, syntax and idiom.

Unlike Welsh, Gaelic has no official status in the United Kingdom. This situation reflects the history of the language first within Scotland and later in the United Kingdom. In particular throughout the last few centuries, when western European languages in general achieved their standard form, Gaelic has lacked the social institutions – centrally either a state-based or an independent educational system – which shape a register of the language common to all educated speakers. It is true that the Presbyterian churches and their associated schools made a signal contribution in this respect, but even that fell far short of what is normally provided by a system of secular education. Gaelic has had simply no place in the centres of political power since the high Middle Ages.

To understand all this, it is necessary to see the language in an historical perspective. Gaelic was brought to Scotland by colonists from Ireland towards the end of the Roman Empire in Britain. By 500 AD these Gaels had established their Kingdom of Dál Riada, centred on what is now Argyll in south-west Scotland; in Gaelic, Arra (or Earra) Ghàidheal, ‘the coastland of the Gael’. To Roman writers they were Scotti – Scotia at this time denoted Ireland – although these names cannot be traced with certainty to an origin in Gaelic itself. But from these Latin forms came the name Scotland. In Gaelic, however, the country is Alba, as in Irish Gaelic and Alban in Welsh.

By the eleventh century, Gaelic was at its highest point in Scotland and known to some degree virtually throughout the country. A Gaelic-speaking court, supported by the Columban church, gave patronage to makers of literature at the highest levels of society.

With the Anglicisation of the dynasty late in that century, what has been described as a shift to an English way of life was deliberately planned and, as far as possible, implemented. The court itself became English and Norman-French in speech and the northern English dialect (Inglis) was fostered as the official language. The loss of status that these changes entailed for Gaelic had a profound and permanent effect.

In the mid-twelfth century the Lordship of the Isles, founded in part on the Norse kingdom of the Western and Southern Isles, but drawing also on the traditions of a former, wider Gaelic territory, emerged as a quasi-independent state. Until the Lordship was destroyed by the central authorities of Scotland in the late fifteenth century, Gaelic culture and learning continued to flourish. In the same twelfth century a reorganised literary order, whose main centres were in Ireland, was codifying Gaelic to produce an elegant formal register of the language, which we call Classical Gaelic. It was common to the learned classes of Ireland and Scotland and taught to the children of the aristocracy. It lasted in Scotland until the eighteenth century.

We can see this in religious prose (Bishop John Carswell’s translation of the Book of Common Order in 1567 was the first Gaelic printed book and the first in any Celtic language), culminating in the translation of the scriptures in various phases until 1801. These literary activities involve a remarkably skilful transition from classical to vernacular Gaelic writing. On that basis, but drawing also on colloquial speech, Gaelic prose-writers developed a formal standard register whose strength is most evident in expository writings. Only in the twentieth century, however, and particularly with the founding of the periodical *Gairm* (1952–), and with new opportunities afforded by radio for short-story and other creative writing, was Gaelic freed from the rigidities of its older conventions. Verse too displays similar modulations from classical to vernacular Gaelic, although a tradition of oral vernacular song-poetry predominates. The renaissance of poetry in the twentieth century draws, with a variety of personal combinations, upon these resources.

Modern Gaelic offers the learner a wide spectrum of styles, ranging from formal registers, still in some degree associated with the church, to rich vivid idiomatic speech. Gaelic as a living language is now largely confined to north-western and island communities. But Gaelic speakers of local dialects are still to be found here and

there throughout the Highlands. There are, besides, sizeable communities in the cities, particularly in Glasgow. A number of organisations are active in promoting the language. The oldest is An Comann Gaidhealach, founded at the end of the nineteenth century. In the last few years, the Gaelic College in Skye (at Sabhal Mór Ostaig), Comunn na Gàidhlige (CNAG) and Comann Luchd Ionnsachaidh (CLI) have all been established with the purpose of reviving the fortunes of the language.

While it is true that the history of the language is largely one of resistance to ethnical policies that sought to exclude the Gaels from the world of post-Renaissance Europe, contemporary developments in education, radio and television, and in literature generally, aim to redress the balance. And it should be noted that some of the most interesting writers now active on the literary scene are not native speakers but learners of Gaelic.

## Glossary of grammatical terms

### Fronting

This occurs when a word is moved from its usual position in a sentence to nearer the beginning of the sentence, for special emphasis.

### Helping (Epenthetic) vowels

A vowel inserted between two consonants in certain words (usually containing l, r or n, e.g.: Alba 'Scotland' is pronounced as if it were 'Alaba').

### Lenition

Lenition (softening) is a process whereby certain consonants at the beginning of words are made 'softer'. This is indicated in writing by adding an 'h' to the consonant. Lenition changes beag ('small') to bheag, pronounced 'veg'.

### Slenderisation/palatalisation

A process which makes consonants at the end of words sound slender. A sound is made slender by adding a 'y' sound, as in English 'yes' to its pronunciation. A 'g' sound, for example, is slenderised by pronouncing it like the 'g' in 'argue'.

## Pronunciation and Lenition

The pronunciation of Scottish Gaelic is somewhat different to English in certain respects; not all letters have an equivalent sound in English, and some consonants change their sound according to their position in the word. This being so, please bear in mind that some of the following guidelines may only be approximate. The vocabulary lists in each lesson show the pronunciation of every word in International Phonetics Association (IPA) notation; the fact that you might not have a 'standard English' accent renders our customary form of imitated pronunciation untrustworthy.

Naturally, if you wish to hear and acquire perfect pronunciation, you should use the two cassette recordings which we have produced as an optional 'extra' to this Course. These tapes will allow you to hear the Gaelic words and phrases as you follow them in the book.

Whether you use the recordings or not, you should nevertheless read through the following notes on Scottish Gaelic pronunciation. There is no need to learn the rules by heart at this point. They should be referred to at frequent intervals, and soon you will become familiar with them. The same applies to the paragraphs dealing with lenition (a form of mutation, or change of consonant at the beginning of a word); this is a feature of the language which you cannot ignore but shouldn't get stuck on. In the meantime, you can start at Lesson 1.

### Stress

Unlike English, the stress in Scottish Gaelic always falls on the first syllable of a word. Compare the word for 'police(men)' in English and Gaelic, where capital letters indicate the main stress:

English:	<b>poLICE</b>	/pə lis/
Scottish Gaelic:	<b>POILios</b>	/poləs/

There are some exceptions however, which are stressed on the second syllable. This is generally indicated by means of a hyphen in written and printed Gaelic, e.g.: **a-n-sin**, **a-ri-thist**, **a-staigh**.

## Spelling, Alphabet

Although Scottish Gaelic spelling may seem complicated at first sight, it is in fact more regular than English, so that you can generally tell from the written form of a word how it is to be pronounced once you have become familiar with the spelling system.

There are eighteen letters in the Gaelic alphabet; the letters j, k, q, v, w, x, y, z are not used, except in some recent loan-words.

Despite having a slightly smaller alphabet, Scottish Gaelic has far more individual sounds than English. These are represented by various combinations of the eighteen letters, as we will see below.

## Vowels

### Accents

In Gaelic there are both short and long vowels. Long vowels are indicated by means of accents. There are two accents used in Scottish Gaelic:

the acute (‘), found only on the letters e and o

the grave (˘), found on a, o, u, i, e

The difference in pronunciation between a, o, u, i, e and à, ò, ù, ì, è respectively is one of pure length. The difference on the other hand between è, ò and é, ó respectively is one of quality. The grave è sounds like the ‘ai’ in ‘fair’; the acute é sounds like the ‘ay’ in ‘say’. Compare the French ‘è’ and ‘é’.

The acute accent is occasionally also used to differentiate between unclear and clear vowels, e.g.:

as (unclear) ás (clear)

**Note:** there has been a recent move to abandon the use of acute accents in Gaelic and many people prefer to use only the grave accent. However, both accents will be used for the purposes of this Course.

## Pronunciation of Vowels

Gaelic letter	IPA symbol
---------------	------------

a	/a/	like ‘a’ in ‘hat’
à	/a:/	like ‘a’ in ‘halve’
o	/o,ɔ,y/	like ‘o’ in ‘coat’, like ‘o’ in ‘cot’ and like ‘u’ in ‘cut’

ò	/ɔ:/	like ‘au’ in ‘caught’
ó	/o:/	like ‘o’ in ‘owe’; the lips are more rounded for ó than for ò
u	/u,u/	like ‘oo’ in ‘took’
ù	/u:/	like ‘oo’ in ‘cool’
i	/i/	like ‘ee’ in ‘deep’
ì	/i:/	like ‘ea’ in ‘bean’
e	/e,ɛ/	like ‘a’ in ‘gate’ and ‘e’ in ‘get’
è	/ɛ:/	like ‘ai’ in ‘fair’
é	/e:/	like ‘ay’ in ‘say’

When i is added to any of these vowels, there is usually no change in pronunciation. The vowels appearing in the following rows are pronounced similarly:

Vowel	Add i	Other vowels (in this case a change in pronunciation is indicated)
a	ai	ea
à	ài	
o	oi	eo
ò	òi	èò, eòi
ó	ói	
u	ui†	iu,iui
i		io
ì		ìo
e	ei	ea
è	èi	
é	éi	

†Note that ui may be pronounced /u/ or /u:/.

The following vowel sounds should also be noted:

eu	/ia,e:/	like ‘ia’ in ‘Maria’ and ‘ay’ in ‘say’
ao	/u:/	has no equivalent in English. It is similar to ‘oo’ in ‘cool’ but with unrounded lips
aoi	/y/	has no equivalent in English; it is similar to ‘oy’ in ‘boy’ but with unrounded ‘o’
ia(i)	/iə/	like ‘ea’ in ‘ear’
ua(i)	/uə/	like ‘oo’ in ‘poor’
ea	/ɛ,a/	like ‘e’ in ‘get’ and ‘a’ in ‘hat’
io	/i,u/	like ‘ee’ in ‘deep’ and ‘oo’ in ‘took’
íó	/iə/	like ‘ea’ in ‘ear’

## Diphthongs

We have met the diphthongs ia, ua, aoi, eu. There are five others. These diphthongs are not represented by a combination of vowel sounds but must be inferred from the following consonant(s). Short (stressed) vowels preceding ll, nn, m and bh, mh, dh, gh are frequently modified and pronounced as diphthongs, as follows:

Gaelic spelling	IPA	
all, ann, am	/au/	like 'ow' in 'how'
oll, onn, om	/ou/	like 'o' in standard English 'no'
aill, ainn, aim,	/ai/	like 'y' in 'my'
aibh, aimh		
einn, eim	/eɪ/	like 'ay' in 'say'
oill, oinn, oim,	/xi/	has no equivalent in English; it is similar to 'y' in 'my' but the first part of the diphthong is like the 'u' in 'cut'. It is somewhere between 'y' in 'my' and 'oy' in 'boy'
aidh, aigh,		
oidh, oigh		
uill, uinn, uim	/ui, uɪ/	has no equivalent in English; it is similar to the previous diphthong, but the first part of the diphthong is like an unrounded form of 'oo' in 'cool'

The above rules only hold when the consonants ll, nn, m are not followed by vowels, in which case the vowels are pronounced as normal. Compare:

ann /aʊ̯/ Anna /aʊ̯ə/  
donn /dʌʊ̯/ donna /dɔ̯ə/

## Helping (Epenthetic) Vowels

A vowel is inserted between two consonants in certain words (usually containing l, r or n). This vowel is called a helping or epenthetic vowel; it is present in sound only, and is usually an exact copy of the preceding stressed vowel. (Think of someone with a good Scots accent saying 'harm' or 'film'; the 'r' and the 'l' are rolled, and the vowel is virtually repeated – 'harram', 'fillim'.) Here are some examples – the square brackets show that an epenthetic syllable is pronounced differently to ordinary disyllables:

Alba /[alə]bə/ Scotland

marbh	/m[ara]v/	dead
arm	/[ara]m/	army

The realisation of these 'helping' syllables varies a great deal in Gaelic dialects; don't worry too much about them at this stage.

## Consonants

In Gaelic the consonants may be divided into two groups, the 'broad' consonants and the 'slender' consonants. For every broad consonant, there is a corresponding slender consonant; so we may speak of a broad and slender k or g or d and so on.

A consonant is broad if it is preceded or followed by any of the broad vowels a, o, u; it is slender if preceded or followed by any of the slender vowels i, e. Preceding or following a, o, u indicate that a consonant is broad; preceding or following i, e indicate that a consonant is slender. Since a consonant cannot be both broad and slender, vowels on both sides of a consonant must agree according to 'colour' (broad or slender). This is sometimes stated as a rule:

caol ri caol is leathann ri leathann  
i.e. slender with slender and broad with broad

Consider the following examples:

caileag, balla, gille, daoine, baga, pàipear, Seumas, Màiri, brògan.

As is the case with most rules, there are some exceptions, e.g.: dèante, esan, etc.

## Broad Consonants

The pronunciation of the broad consonants is in most cases similar to their English counterparts. But some essential differences will be observed.

Gaelic letter	IPA	
b	/b, p/	like 'b' in 'bad' at the beginning of a word; otherwise it is pronounced like 'p' in 'cap'
p	/p/	like 'p' in 'pad'
g	/g, k/	like 'g' in 'good' at the beginning of a word; otherwise it is pronounced like 'k' in 'cook'

<b>k</b>	/k/	like 'c' in 'cat'
<b>d</b>	/d, ɣ/	like 'd' in dog at the beginning of a word; otherwise it is pronounced like 't' in cat. Tongue touches upper teeth
<b>t</b>	/t/	like 't' in tap. Tongue touches upper teeth.
<b>l, ll</b>	/l/	like a hollow 'l' as in 'full' with the tongue touching the upper teeth
<b>n</b>	/n, n/	is pronounced in a similar fashion to the hollow 'l' described above when it appears initially; otherwise broad 'n' is pronounced as in English
<b>nn</b>	/n/	is pronounced in a similar fashion to the hollow 'l' described above
<b>r</b>	/r, r/	has no equivalent in English but is similar to a rolled 'r'; this sound appears for 'r' initially; otherwise broad 'r' is pronounced like 'r' in 'read'
<b>rr</b>	/r/	has no equivalent in English but is similar to a rolled 'r'
<b>ng</b>	/ŋ/	like 'ng' in 'kong'

Broad f, h, m, s are pronounced like their English counterparts.

## Slender Consonants

### Gaelic IPA

#### letter

<b>b</b>	/b/, p <sup>j</sup> /	like 'b' in 'bee' or like 'b' in 'beauty' at the beginning of a word; otherwise it is pronounced like 'p' in 'loop'
<b>p</b>	/p <sup>j</sup> /	like 'p' in 'pea' or like 'p' in 'pew'
<b>g</b>	/g <sup>j</sup> , k <sup>j</sup> /	like 'g' in 'argue' at the beginning of a word; otherwise it is pronounced like 'c' in 'cue'
<b>k</b>	/k <sup>j</sup> /	like 'c' in 'cue'
<b>d</b>	/d <sup>j</sup> , t <sup>j</sup> /	like 'j' in 'judge' at the beginning of a word; otherwise it is pronounced like 'ch' in 'chew'
<b>t</b>	/t <sup>j</sup> /	like 'ch' in 'chew'
<b>l</b>	/l, ɿ/	like 'll' in 'million' when it appears initially; otherwise slender 'l' is pronounced like 'l' in 'silly'
<b>ll</b>	/ɿ/	like 'll' in 'million'
<b>n</b>	/n, n/	like the first 'n' in 'onion' when it appears initially; otherwise slender 'n' is pronounced like n in 'neat' and in some instances like the first 'n' in 'onion'

<b>nn</b>	/ɲ/	like the first 'n' in 'onion'
<b>r</b>	/r <sup>j</sup> /	has no equivalent in English and varies considerably from dialect to dialect; it is in some dialects similar to 'r' in 'tree'
<b>ng</b>	/ŋ <sup>j</sup> /	like 'ng' in 'king'
<b>f</b>	/f <sup>j</sup> /	like 'f' in 'few'
<b>h</b>	/h, χ/	like 'h' in 'happy' and 'h' in 'hue'
<b>m</b>	/m, m <sup>j</sup> /	is pronounced like 'm' in 'meal' or like 'm' in 'mule'
<b>s</b>	/ʃ/	is pronounced like 'sh' in 'shoe'

Recent loan-words with 't' or 'd' from English are pronounced as in English, e.g:

<b>ti</b>	/ti:/	tea
<b>dola</b>	/dələ/	doll

## Preaspiration

'Preaspiration' means the placing of an h-like sound before certain consonants.

The voiceless consonants t, c, p following a stressed vowel are usually preaspirated in Gaelic. The preaspiration takes the form of voiceless breathing /h/ before each of the consonants. The preaspiration may be realised as a 'ch' especially before c. Preaspiration is not so noticeable in some dialects, particularly in some north-western dialects. Here are some examples:

### Gaelic IPA

#### spelling

<b>cat</b>	cat	/kaht/
<b>cait</b>	cats	/kaht <sup>j</sup> /
<b>mac</b>	son	/mahk/, /maxk/
<b>mic</b>	sons	/mihk <sup>j</sup> /, /mičk <sup>j</sup> /
<b>map</b>	map	/mahp/

## Rt, rd groups

Related to preaspiration is the insertion of 's' between r and a following t and d in stressed syllables, e.g:

<b>ceart</b>	/k <sup>i</sup> ə:sd/	right
<b>àrd</b>	/a:rsd/	high

Not all dialects insert 's' in these groups.

## Hiatus

When two adjacent vowels are not joined together as one vowel, we say that there is hiatus (a gap) between them. In many words **bh**, **mh**, **dh**, **gh** are mute when they appear between vowels. The preceding and following syllables are generally not coalesced (i.e. joined together); there is a gap between such syllables. This hiatus will be denoted by a hyphen (the symbol */-*) in the IPA transcription. Here are some examples:

laghach	/ʎ-əx/	kind
saoghal	/suw-əɿ/	world
cladhach	/kʎv-əx/	digging
abhainn	/ã-ɪŋ/	river

-th-, which is usually pronounced as /h/, is used only in a small number of words to indicate hiatus, e.g.:

latha	/ɿ-a-ə/	day
fhathast	/ha-əsd/	yet
rathad	/ra-əd/	road

## More consonants

In English when we write 'h' after 't', 'd', 'c', 'g', 'p', 's', 'w', we form new sounds 'th', 'dh', 'ch', 'gh', 'ph', 'sh', 'wh'. The letter **h** is used far more frequently in this way in Scottish Gaelic than in English. It is important to note that when **h** is added to a consonant in Scottish Gaelic, the resulting consonant is *never* pronounced as in English. Once again we must distinguish between broad and slender. Here is a list of the consonants which may be written with **h** to form new sounds:

### Broad

#### Gaelic IPA letter

ph	/f/	like 'f' in 'fish'
bh	/v/	like 'v' in 'very'
ch	/x/	like 'ch' in Scottish 'loch' and German 'ch' in 'Bach'
gh	/ɣ/	the voiced version of 'ch'; like 'r' in French 'rire'
th	/h/	like 'h' in 'hat'; it is never pronounced like 'th' in 'think'

dh	/ɣ/	like broad 'gh' (i.e. like 'r' in French 'rire')
mh	/v/	like broad 'bh' (i.e. like 'v' in 'very')
sh	/h/	like broad 'th' (i.e. like 'h' in 'hat')
fh	-	is not pronounced (except in <b>fhathast</b> 'yet', <b>fhuair</b> 'got' and <b>fhalbh</b> 'go', in which case it is pronounced as <b>h</b> ).

### Slender

#### Gaelic IPA letter

ph	/f, f̪/	like 'f' in 'fast' and 'f̪' in 'few'
bh	/v, v̪/	like 'v' in 'very' and 'v̪' in 'view'
ch	/ç/	like 'h' in 'hue' or 'ch' in German 'ich'
gh	/j/	like 'y' in 'yes'
th	/h, ç/	like broad <b>th</b> or slender <b>ch</b>
dh	/j/	like slender <b>gh</b>
mh	/v, v̪/	like slender <b>bh</b>
sh	/h, ç/	like broad <b>sh</b> or like slender <b>ch</b>
fh	-	is not pronounced except in <b>fhein</b> 'self', in which case it is pronounced as <b>h</b>

## Initial Mutations

A characteristic which is common to all Celtic languages, including Irish, Manx, Welsh, Cornish and Breton, is the change of certain consonants at the beginning of words. These changes, sometimes called mutations, appear according to grammatical context. In Scottish Gaelic, there are two initial mutations, **lenition** and **nasalisation**. Lenition is very important and will be dealt with presently. Nasalisation, which varies according to dialect, is perhaps not as important for learners as lenition and is discussed in Appendix 4.

### Lenition

Lenition (softening) is a process whereby certain consonants which appear at the beginning of words are made 'softer'. This is indicated in writing by adding an **h** to the consonant. For example lenition changes **p** to an 'f' sound which is spelled **ph**. Lenition

changes an initial **b** to **bh**, **g** to **gh**, **c** to **ch**, **d** to **dh**, **t** to **th**, **m** to **mh**, **s** to **sh**, **f** to **fh**. See above for the pronunciation of these lenitions.

The **h** form of a consonant, when it appears at the beginning of words, is referred to as the lenited form of the consonant. Those consonants which can ‘add’ **h** are called lenitable consonants; there are only nine of them. Lenition is usually but not always caused by a preceding word. Consider the following example:

a cat	her cat
a chat	his cat

You will see that the word for ‘her’ and ‘his’ is **a**, the only difference between them being that the word for ‘his’ lenites a following (lenitable) consonant whereas the word for ‘her’ does not. We say that a ‘his’ is a leniting word and that it lenites a following word. We will distinguish between leniting and non-leniting words by placing the symbol \* after those words which cause lenition. Lenition is extremely common in Scottish Gaelic and we will meet many more leniting words and particles in the lessons below. Here are some more examples of the words for ‘his’ and ‘her’:

bàta	boat	a bàta	her boat	a bhàta	his boat
piuthar	sister	a piuthar	her sister	a phiuthar	his sister
geansaidh	jumper	a geansaidh	her jumper	a gheansaidh	his jumper
cù	dog	a cù	her dog	a chù	his dog
dealbh	picture	a dealbh	her picture	a dhealbh	his picture
taigh	house	a taigh	her house	a thaigh	his house
mac	son	a mac	her son	a mhac	his son
sùil	eye	a sùil	her eye	a shùil	his eye
falt	hair	a falt	her hair	a fhalt	his hair

### Slenderisation/palatalisation

We have seen above that for most consonants, there is a broad and a slender (palatalised) form, each one representing a separate sound in the language. For any consonant, broad and slender forms frequently alternate at the end of words, e.g.: **cat** ‘a cat’ and **cait** ‘cats’. We say that **cait** is the slenderised form of **cat**. A word is slenderised by inserting an **i** before the last consonant or group of consonants. The **i** before a final consonant tells us that the letter is to be pronounced differently, i.e. as a slender consonant. The change of broad **t** to slender **t** is called slenderisation. It is important to note that slenderisation only occurs at the end of words. Slenderisation is used to form the plural form of some

nouns. Here are some examples:

cat	cat	cait	cats
dùn	fort	dùin	forts
balach	boy	balaich	boys
boireannach	woman	boireannaich	women
òran	song	òrain	songs

Slenderisation of a final consonant can in some cases cause the preceding vowel to change form. A list of the common changes will be found in Appendix 1. Here are a few examples where the preceding vowel is affected by the process of slenderisation:

mac	son	mic	sons
fear	man	fir	men
cnoc	hill	cnuic	hills
bòrd	table	bùird	tables
fiadh	deer	féidh	deer ( <i>plural</i> )

Slenderisation is extremely important in Scottish Gaelic and we will meet many further instances of it in the lessons which follow.

### Lenition and slenderisation

Lenition and slenderisation can operate simultaneously on a word. When we address a person in Gaelic, the name is preceded by **a**, which lenites the initial consonant, e.g.:

NORMAL FORM	ADDRESS FORM
Mórag	a Mhórág
Máiri	a Mhàiri
Catríona	a Chatríona

However, when we address a male, the name is also slenderised, e.g.:

NORMAL FORM	ADDRESS FORM
Seumas	a Sheumais
Domhnall	a Dhomhnaill
Tormod	a Thormoid

Note: the sequence **chd** is usually pronounced **chg** in Scottish Gaelic.

# Lesson 1

## 1 Pronouns

mi	I
thu	you
e	he/it
i	she/it
sinn	we
sibh	you ( <i>pl</i> )
iad	they

In Gaelic there are two words used for 'you', **thu** and **sibh**. **Sibh** is used to refer to (a) 'you' plural and (b) 'you' in formal or polite contexts, usually when addressing one's elders or superiors. **Thu** is used otherwise, generally in familiar contexts.

## 2 The verb 'tha' ('to be')

In sentences like 'John is young', 'Ann is small', 'James is tired' we use the verb **tha**. In Gaelic the order of words in such sentences is the same as English except that the verb comes first in the sentence. Consider the following examples:

<b>Tha Iain òg.</b>	John is young.
<b>Tha Anna beag.</b>	Ann is small.
<b>Tha Seumas sgith.</b>	James is tired.
<b>Tha Màiri toilichte.</b>	Mary is happy.
<b>Tha Domhnall an-seo.</b>	Donald is here.
<b>Tha Uilleam an-sin.</b>	William is there.
<b>Tha Ragh纳an an-siud.</b>	Ronald is yonder.
<b>Tha Iain math.</b>	John is good.
<b>Tha Anna gu math.</b>	Ann is well.
<b>Tha mi sgìth.</b>	I am tired.
<b>Tha thu làdir.</b>	You are strong.
<b>Tha e fuar.</b>	He/it is cold.
<b>Tha sinn blàth.</b>	We are warm.
<b>Tha sibh fluich.</b>	You are wet.
<b>Tha iad an-seo.</b>	They are here.

## 3 Indefinite nouns

There is no indefinite article in Gaelic. **Cat** (*sing*) may be translated as 'cat' or 'a cat'. Likewise **cait** (*pl*) means 'cats' or 'some cats'.

<b>cù</b>	/ku:/	(a) dog
<b>càr</b>	/ka:r/	(a) car
<b>deoch</b>	/d̪ɔx/	(a) drink
<b>balach</b>	/baʎəx/	(a) boy
<b>caileag</b>	/kalag/	(a) girl
<b>rùm</b>	/ru:m/	(a) room
<b>taigh</b>	/t̪vɪ/	(a) house
<b>airgead</b>	/[ɛr̪i]g̪əd̪/	money

### 3a 'There is/are'

A noun not preceded by the definite article is referred to as an indefinite noun. When the subject of **tha** is an indefinite noun, we can translate 'there is' or 'there are':

**Tha cat an-seo.**

There is a cat here.

(lit 'a cat is here')

**Tha craobh an-sin.**

There is a tree there.

(lit 'a tree is there')

**Tha caistealan an Glaschu.**

There are castles in Glasgow.

(lit 'castles are in Glasgow')

## 4 'To have'

Gaelic has no verb 'to have'. Instead a periphrastic (or 'long') construction involving the verb **tha** and the preposition **aig** 'at' is used. 'John has a cat' becomes:

**Tha cat aig Iain**

(lit 'a cat is at John')

Similarly:

**Tha cù aig Màiri.**

Mary has a dog.

**Tha leabhar aig Anna.**

Ann has a book.

**Tha taigh aig Seumas.**

James has a house.

**Tha airgead aig Iain.**

John has money.

## 4a Prepositional pronouns

Prepositions normally combine with pronouns to give prepositional pronouns, e.g.:

aig + mi	= agam	at me
aig + thu	= agad	at you
aig + e	= aige	at him
aig + i	= aice	at her
aig + sinn	= againn	at us
aig + sibh	= agaibh	at you
aig + iad	= aca	at them

Tha càr agam. (NOT aig mi)

I have a car.

Tha leabhar agad.

You have a book.

Tha taigh aige.

He has a house.

Tha airgead aca.

They have money.

### Exercise 1

Translate

- 1 Mary is happy.
- 2 John is strong.
- 3 I am warm.
- 4 They are cold.
- 5 We are here.
- 6 Ann has a book.
- 7 James has a car.
- 8 I have a drink.
- 9 We have a house.
- 10 She has a boy.

## 4b 'To know'

A periphrastic construction involving the verb **tha**, the noun **fios** 'knowledge' and the preposition **aig** 'at' is used to translate 'know' in Gaelic as follows:

tha f(h)ios aig Iain	John knows
tha f(h)ios agam	I know

This is generally used for 'know' in the sense of knowing facts as opposed to knowing a person. We will learn a different idiom for 'knowing people' in Lesson 4.

## 5 Negative and interrogative forms of 'tha'

To negate **tha**, simply replace **tha** with **chan eil**:

**Chan eil Iain mór.** John is not big.

**Chan eil Anna toilichte.** Ann is not happy.

**Chan eil mi sgìth.** I am not tired.

**Chan eil iad an-seo.** They are not here.

**Chan eil cat aig Màiri.** Mary doesn't have a cat/has no cat.

**Chan eil deoch aig Domhnall.** Donald doesn't have a drink/has no drink.

**Chan eil airgead agam.** I don't have (any) money/I have no money.

To form the interrogative (positive), replace **tha** with **am bheil**:

**Am bheil Seumas sgìth?** Is James tired?

**Am bheil Màiri fuar?** Is Mary cold?

**Am bheil Iain an-seo?** Is John here?

**Am bheil cat aig Anna?** Does Ann have a cat?

**Am bheil airgead agad?** Do you have (any) money?

To form the interrogative (negative), replace **tha** with **nach eil**:

**Nach eil Anna toilichte?** Isn't Ann happy?

**Nach eil iad math?** Aren't they good?

**Nach eil cù aig Domhnall?** Doesn't Donald have a dog?

**Nach eil taigh aice?** Doesn't she have a house?

## 6 Answering questions

There is no single word for 'yes' or 'no' in Scottish Gaelic. A question is always answered by repeating or echoing the main verb of the question. There is no need to repeat the subject of the sentence. Consider the following examples:

**Am bheil thu gu math?** Are you well?

**Tha.** Yes.

**Chan eil.** No.

**Nach eil i an-sin?** Is she not there?

**Tha.** Yes.

**Chan eil.** No.

## Where are you from?

Study the following phrases:

**Có ás a tha thu?**

tha á Glaschu

tha á Dùn Éideann

tha á Alba

tha á Éirinn

tha á Sasainn

Where are you from?

from Glasgow

from Edinburgh

from Scotland

from Ireland

from England

## 7 'I only have'

Consider the following examples:

**Chan eil not agam.**

I haven't got a pound.

**Chan eil agam ach not.**

I only have a pound.

**Chan eil sgilling aig Seumas.**

James hasn't got a penny.

**Chan eil aig Seumas ach sgilling.**

James only has a penny.

Ach normally means 'but'. Chan eil aig Seumas ach sgilling translates literally as 'James hasn't but a penny'.

## Exercise 2

**Translate**

- 1 Ann is not tired.
- 2 James is not there.
- 3 Mary doesn't have a dog.
- 4 We have no money.
- 5 Is John cold?
- 6 Does Donald have a drink?
- 7 Do they have any money?
- 8 I only have a penny.
- 9 Isn't Donald happy?
- 10 Doesn't he have a car?

## 8 Adverbs

Adverbs are frequently formed by placing **gu** before adjectives:

**math** good

**gu math** well

**dona** bad

**gu dona** badly

**snog** nice

**gu snog** nicely

Other adverbs with **gu** are:

**gu dòigheil** fine

**gu luath** quickly

Watch out for more examples which follow.

## 8a 'How are you?'

Study the following phrases:

**Ciamar a tha thu?**

How are you?

**tha gu math**

well

**tha gu dòigheil**

fine

**chan eil gu dona**

not bad

**chan eil gu math**

not well

**chan eil ach meadhanach**

only middling, so-so

**tha thu fhéin gu math?**

are you well yourself?

(lit 'you are well yourself?')

## Vocabulary

<b>cuideachd</b>	/kud'iəxg/	also
<b>brèagha</b>	/br'i:a-ə/	lovely
<b>fios</b>	/fis/	knowledge
<b>Am bheil fios agad?</b>	/ə vel fis agəd/	Do you know?
<b>gu dearbh</b>	/gə d̪[əre]v/	indeed
<b>nis</b>	/niʃ/	now
<b>ach</b>	/ax/	but
<b>no</b>	/nɔ:/	or
<b>rùm</b>	/ru:m/	room
<b>idir</b>	/id̪'er/	at all
<b>uile</b>	/ułə/	all
<b>an-diugh</b>	/ən d̪u:/	today
<b>slàinte mhath</b>	/sʃa:nd̪ə vā/	good health

## COMHRADH (CONVERSATION)

**Iain** Am bheil taigh aig Seumas an-seo?

**Anna** Tha, tha taigh aig Seumas an-siud. Tha taigh aig Domhnall cuideachd agus tha e brèagha.

**Iain** Am bheil cù agus cat aca, am bheil fios agad?

**Anna** Chan eil, chan eil cù no cat aca.

**Iain** Gu dearbh! Nis, am bheil càr agad?

**Anna** Tha, tha càr agam ach chan eil e mórr idir.

- Iain* Agus am bheil taigh agad?  
*Anna* Chan eil, chan eil taigh agam. Chan eil airgead agam. Agus chan eil taigh aig Uilleam no aig Màiri. Tha caileag agus balach aca.
- Iain* Am bheil Raghnaill an-seo?  
*Anna* Tha, tha Raghnaill an-seo. Tha rùm aige. Tha e toilichte an-seo. Tha leabhar aige agus tha e math.
- Iain* Am bheil sibh uile toilichte an-seo?  
*Anna* Chan eil, chan eil sinn uile toilichte idir. Tha e fuar agus flucht an-diugh agus tha sinn sgìth.
- Iain* Am bheil deoch agad?  
*Anna* Tha, tha deoch agam an-seo – blàth agus làdir. Slàinte mhath!

#### TRANSLATION

- John* Does James have a house here?  
*Ann* Yes, James has a house over there. Donald has a house also and it's lovely.
- John* Do they have a dog and a cat, do you know?  
*Ann* No, they don't have a dog or a cat.
- John* Indeed! Now, do you have a car?  
*Ann* I have a car but it's not big at all.
- John* And do you have a house?  
*Ann* I have no house. I have no money. And neither William nor Mary have a house. They have a girl and a boy.
- John* Is Ronald here?  
*Ann* Ronald is here. He has a room. He is happy here. He has a book and it's good.
- John* Are you all happy here?  
*Ann* We aren't all happy here at all. It's cold and wet today and we are tired.
- John* Do you have a drink?  
*Ann* I have a drink here – warm and strong. Good health!

## Lesson 2

### 9 Emphatic pronouns

mise	I
t(h)usa	you
esan	he
ise	she
sinne	we
sibhse	you
iadsan	them

Gaelic normally uses emphatic suffixes (rather than tone or stress) for emphatic and contrastive purposes.

- Tha Iain beag ach tha mise mór.** John is small but *I'm* big.  
**Tha Anna sgìth ach chan eil mise.** Ann is tired but *I'm* not.  
**Ciamar a tha thu?** How are you?  
**Ciamar a tha thusa?** How are you?

### 9a 'Who are you?'

To ask who someone is, we use *có* 'who?' with either the emphatic or unemphatic form of the pronouns as follows:

Có thusa?	OR	Có thu?	Who are you?
Có ise?		Có i?	Who is she?
Có esan?		Có e?	Who is he?
Có sibhse?		Có sibh?	Who are you? (formal, polite and plural)
Có iadsan?		Có iad?	Who are they?

### 10 The verb 'is' ('to be')

There are two verbs 'to be' in Gaelic, *tha* and *is*. We met *tha* in Lesson 1. In sentences like 'I am John', 'you are Ann', 'he is James', we use the verb *is*. As with *tha*, *is* comes first in the sentence. You will note from the following examples that the emphatic forms of the pronouns are usually used with *is*:

- Is mise Iain.**  
**Is tusa Anna.**

- I am John.**  
**You are Ann.**

<b>Is esan Seumas.</b>	He is James.
<b>Is ise Peigi.</b>	She is Peggy.
<b>Is sinne an clas Gàidhlig.</b>	We are the Gaelic class.
<b>Is sibhse an tidsear.</b>	You are the teacher.
<b>Is iadsan Màiri agus Calum.</b>	They are Mary and Calum.

Note: *tusa* rather than *thusa* is used with *is.*

### 10a A note on the difference between 'tha' and 'is'

In sentences like 'John is young' and 'she is Ann' we refer to 'young' and 'Ann' as being predicates (i.e. that which is being said about the subject of the sentence) of the verb 'to be'. A useful rule on the use of *tha* and *is* is as follows:

when the predicate is a noun, use is  
when the predicate is anything else (e.g. adjective, adverb, etc),  
use tha

Note: this is one of the most important rules of Gaelic grammar and is important to remember.

Another minor difference between the verbs *tha* and *is* is that *is* is unstressed and is usually pronounced as *s*.

### 10b Negative and interrogative forms of 'is'

To negate is replace is with **cha** or **chan** as follows:

<b>Cha mhise Iain.</b>	I am not John.
<b>Cha tua Anna.</b>	You aren't Ann.
<b>Chan esan Seumas.</b>	He isn't James.
<b>Chan ise Peigi.</b>	She isn't Peggy.
<b>Cha sinne an clas Gàidhlig.</b>	We aren't the Gaelic class.
<b>Cha sibhse an tidsear.</b>	You aren't the teacher.
<b>Chan iadsan Màiri agus Calum.</b>	They aren't Mary and Calum.

You will note that **cha** becomes **chan** before a following vowel (i.e. before **esan**, **ise**, **jadsan**) and that **cha** lenites **mise**.

To form the interrogative (positive) replace **is** with **an** (**am** before **mine**):

<b>Am mise Iain?</b>	<b>Am I John?</b>
<b>An tusa Anna?</b>	<b>Are you Ann?</b>
<b>An esan Seumas?</b>	<b>Is he James?</b>
<b>An ise Peigi?</b>	<b>Is she Peggy?</b>

An sinne an clas Gàidhlig?	Are we the Gaelic class?
An sibhse an tidsear?	Are you the teacher?
An iadsan Màiri agus Calum?	Are they Mary and Calum?
To form the interrogative (negative) replace is with <b>nach</b> :	
Nach mise Iain?	Am I not John?
Nach tusa Anna?	Aren't you Ann?
Nach esan Seumas?	Isn't he James?

To answer any of the above *is* questions, the answer must always include either the positive or the negative form of *is* and also the appropriate unemphatic pronoun:

POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
is mi	cha mhi
is tu	cha tu
se (<is + e)	chan e
si (<is + i)	chan i
is sinn	cha sinn
is sibh	cha sibh
siad (<is + iad)	chan iad

### Some examples:

An tusa Iain? Is mi.	Are you John? Yes.
An ise Anna? Si.	Is she Ann? Yes.
An sibhse Màiri agus Peigi? Cha sinn.	Are you Mary and Peggy? No.
An iadsan an clas Gàidhlig? Chan iad.	Are they the Gaelic class? No.

### Exercise 1

### *Translate*

- 1 I am Ann.
  - 2 He is Calum.
  - 3 She is Peggy.
  - 4 You aren't James.
  - 5 They aren't the Gaelic class.
  - 6 She isn't Mary.
  - 7 Aren't you Donald? No.
  - 8 Are you John? Yes.
  - 9 They are Peggy and Mary.
  - 10 You are the teacher.

## 11 Gender

Scottish Gaelic has two genders – feminine and masculine. Nouns are either feminine or masculine. The gender of a noun must be learnt by heart as there is no easy way of telling a word's gender. A good example of this is the word **boireannach** 'woman' which is grammatically a masculine noun. The main difference between masculine and feminine nouns is that (a) feminine nouns are generally lenited after the definite article (nominative) and (b) adjectives following feminine nouns are generally lenited, e.g.:

### MASCULINE

**an gille beag** the little boy    **a' chaileag bheag** the little girl

### FEMININE

Here are some useful phrases which illustrate the difference between masculine and feminine nouns:

<b>madainn mhath</b>	good morning
<b>feasgar math</b>	good evening
<b>oidhche mhath</b>	good night

## 12 The pronouns 'fear' and 'té'

The words **fear** (*m*) and **té** (*f*) which normally mean 'man' and 'woman', respectively, can act as pronouns meaning 'one'. **Fear** meaning 'one' is used when referring to masculine nouns; **té** is used when referring to feminine nouns:

<b>leabhar</b> ( <i>m</i> ) book	<b>fear mór</b> a big one
<b>deoch</b> ( <i>f</i> ) drink	<b>té bheag</b> a small one

## 13 Case in Gaelic

There are three cases in Gaelic: nominative, prepositional and genitive. The nominative is the dictionary form of a word (article, noun, adjective) and corresponds to the traditional cases of nominative (subjects) and accusative (objects). The prepositional corresponds partly to the traditional dative case and is used only after prepositions. The prepositional and genitive will be discussed in Lessons 6 and 7.

## 14 Definite article ('the')

The definite article always precedes the noun it qualifies and agrees in gender, number and case with it. We can distinguish between

four main forms of the article in Gaelic: **an**, **an\***, **na**, **nan**. As we will see, each capital form stands for a distinct set of forms (usually 2 or 3) of the article. We will deal only with the first two forms here.

### NOMINATIVE FORMS

The article has two nominative forms: **an**, which is used before masculine nouns, and **an\***, which is used before feminine nouns. The spelling of each form of the article changes slightly according to the initial sound of the following word. These changes are helpful as they reflect the pronunciation in each case.

#### (i) Masculine article **an**

The masculine article **an** is spelt:

<b>am</b>	before all labial sounds, i.e. <b>b f m p</b>
<b>an t-</b>	before all vowels
<b>an</b>	otherwise
<b>am fear</b>	the man
<b>am balach</b>	the boy
<b>am ministear</b>	the minister
<b>am peann</b>	the pen
<b>an t-uisge</b>	the water
<b>an t-airgead</b>	the money
<b>an sagart</b>	the priest
<b>an t-im</b>	the butter
<b>an taigh</b>	the house
<b>an t-eilean</b>	the island
<b>an loch</b>	the lake

It will be seen that the change in spelling of **an** to **am** reflects the pronunciation of **an** before the labials **b f m p**. Compare your pronunciation of **n** in the English word input; you will more than likely pronounce this **n** as an **m**. A **t-** is prefixed before all masculine nouns beginning in a vowel after the masculine article **an**.

#### (ii) Feminine article **an\***

The feminine article **an\*** is spelt:

<b>a' + lenition</b>	before all lenitable consonants (except <b>d t s f</b> ), i.e. <b>b c g m p</b>
<b>an t-</b>	before <b>s sl sr sn</b> , but NOT before <b>sg sp st</b>
<b>an + lenition</b>	before <b>f</b>
<b>an</b>	otherwise, i.e. before all vowels, <b>d n t l r</b> and <b>sg sp st</b>

Recall that the symbol \* indicates that a word usually causes lenition (see Lesson 10).

a' chlach	the stone	an fhuil	the blood	an deoch	the drink
a' bhó	the cow	an fheòl	the meat	an teanga	the tongue
a' Bheurla	(the) English	an t-sùil	the eye	an obair	the work
a' Ghàidhlig	(the) Gaelic	an t-sràid	the street	an sgoil	the school

The feminine definite article generally lenites a following consonant, in which case the **n** of the article is not pronounced (except before **fh-**) and therefore dropped in spelling, hence **a'**. The **n** is pronounced and therefore retained before **fh-**. The dentals (i.e. sounds made at the teeth) **d t** are NOT lenited by the feminine article; the lenition is 'blocked' in such instances. This means that it is difficult to distinguish between masculine and feminine nouns beginning with **d t** when they are preceded by the article, e.g.:

an duine (m)	the man
an deoch (f)	the drink
an taigh (m)	the house
an ti (f)	the tea

The feminine article prefixes **t-** to feminine nouns beginning with **s** (**sl sr sn**), in which case the **s** is not pronounced. It follows that the groups **t-s, t-sl, t-sr, t-sn** are pronounced, respectively, as **t, tl, tr, tn**. The reason that **t** is not prefixed to feminine words beginning with **sg, sp, st** is that the initial groups **tg, tp, tt** are not possible in Gaelic.

## 14a Use of article

When a noun is used to designate an entire class, the singular article is often used, e.g.:

am bradan	salmon
an t-each	horses
am feur	grass

The article is always used before abstract nouns, e.g.:

an aois	age
an sgios	tiredness
am blàs	warmth

## Exercise 2

Put the proper form of the nominative article before the following nouns:

1 leabhar (m)	/lə:bər/	book
2 ceòl (m)	/kə:l/	music

3 craobh (f)	/krə:v/	tree
4 piob (f)	/pi:b/	pipe
5 bean (f)	/ben/	wife
6 feannag (f)	/fjə:nag/	crow
7 sràid (f)	/sdrə:d/	street
8 sporan (m)	/sboran/	purse
9 pàipear (m)	/pə:hper/	paper
10 té (f)	/t'e:/	woman

## 15 Possessive constructions

There are two possessive constructions in Scottish Gaelic, each involving the use of personal pronouns. The first construction involves the use of possessive pronouns which precede the noun they qualify. The second construction involves the use of the definite article and the prepositional pronouns formed from the preposition **aig**, 'at'.

### (i) Possessive pronouns

Before consonants

mo*	m'	my	
do*	d' or t'	your	
a*	a	his	
a	a h-	her	
ar	ar n-	our	
ur	ur n-	your	
an / am	an / am	their	
mo mhàthair	my mother	m'athair	my father
do bhràthair	your brother	d'aodann	your face
a phiuthar	his sister	a athair	his father
a cas	her foot	a h-athair	her father
ar mac	our son	ar n-athair	our father
ur nighean	your daughter	ur n-athair	your father
an làmhan	their hands	an athair	their father

Note: **an** 'their' becomes **am** before labials, e.g.: **am bràthair** their brother.

Possessive pronouns are normally used with the so-called inalienables, i.e. parts of the body and blood relations, e.g.: **làmh** arm, **cas** leg, **sùil** eye, **màthair** mother, **athair** father, **mac** son, **nighean** daughter.

## (ii) Alternative possessive construction involving prepositional pronouns

This construction involves the definite article, which precedes the noun, and the appropriate prepositional pronoun formed from the preposition *aig* 'at' which follows the noun. 'My cat' becomes **an cat agam** in Gaelic, *lit* 'the cat at-me'. Here are some further examples:

<b>an cù agad</b>	your dog
<b>an leabhar aige</b>	his book
<b>an t-airgead aice</b>	her money
<b>a' bhó againn</b>	our cow
<b>an obair agaibh</b>	your work
<b>an deoch aca</b>	their drink

This possessive construction is generally used with the so-called 'alienables', i.e. nouns which are not parts of the body or blood relations.

### Exercise 3

#### Translate

- 1 my sister
- 2 your mother
- 3 her father
- 4 their son
- 5 his foot
- 6 our dog
- 7 their money
- 8 your cow
- 9 her work
- 10 her eye

## 16 Position and status of adjectives

Adjectives normally follow the noun they qualify. There is a small number of exceptions which precede the noun, and these will be discussed below. An adjective following a feminine noun is lenited (nominative form); an adjective following a masculine noun is not lenited (nominative form).

### MASCULINE

<b>cù mór</b>	a big dog	<b>caileag bheag</b>	a small girl
<b>rùm dorcha</b>	a dark room	<b>slàinte mhath</b>	good health
<b>còta dearg</b>	a red coat	<b>léine gheal</b>	a white shirt
<b>taigh beag</b>	a small house	<b>uinneag shalach</b>	a dirty window
<b>òran math</b>	a good song	<b>oidhche mhath</b>	a good night <sup>1</sup>

A noun can be followed by more than one adjective. There is a certain order in which these adjectives may occur. Adjectives denoting size (e.g.: **mór** 'big', **beag** 'small') tend always to appear first in a string of adjectives, e.g.:

<b>cù mór dubh</b>	a big black dog
<b>léine bheag gheal</b>	a small white shirt

You will note that a feminine noun lenites all (attributive) adjectives which follow it.

Note: it is only attributive and not predicative adjectives which are affected by lenition. Consider the following two examples which contain attributive adjectives:

<b>bròg bheag</b>	a small shoe
<b>clach throm</b>	a heavy stone

The following two examples, on the other hand, contain predicative adjectives:

<b>Tha a' bhròg beag.</b>	The shoe is small.
<b>Tha a' chlach throm.</b>	The stone is heavy.

The following example contains both attributive and predicative adjectives:

**Tha [a' chlach bheag (attr)] throm (pred).** The small stone is heavy.

### (i) Adjectives which precede a noun

We have already mentioned that there are some adjectives which precede the noun they qualify, the most important of which are:

<b>seann*</b>	old
<b>deagh*</b>	good

<sup>1</sup>Oidhche mhath is also used to wish someone 'goodnight'.

**droch\*** bad

These adjectives lenite the initial consonant of a following noun (except d t s in the case of **seann**).

<b>seann chroitear</b>	an old crofter
<b>seann duine</b>	an old man
<b>deagh sheinneadair</b>	a good singer
<b>droch bhiadh</b>	bad food

The nominative article, when it appears, always precedes the adjectives **seann**, **deagh**, **droch**. It always appears as **an** before **deagh** and **droch**. **An** is used before **seann** when **seann** precedes a masculine noun; **an t-** is used when **seann** precedes a feminine noun. Study the following examples :

<b>an deagh sheinneadair (m)</b>	the good singer
<b>an droch shíde (f)</b>	the bad weather
<b>an t-seann bhròg (f)</b>	the old shoe
<b>an seann chòta (m)</b>	the old coat

(ii) 'The same'

The adjectives **aon\*** and **dearbh\*** also precede the noun they qualify and are usually preceded by the article **an** 'the', e.g.:

<b>an aon bheachd</b>	the same opinion
<b>an aon chàr</b>	the same car
<b>an dearbh bhalach</b>	the very boy
<b>an dearbh rud</b>	the very thing

(iii) 'Very' and 'too'

The words **glé\*** 'very' and **ro\*** 'too' lenite a following adjective.

Study the following:

<b>glé mhath</b>	very well
<b>glé bheag</b>	very small
<b>glé mhór</b>	very big
<b>ro mhath</b>	too good
<b>ro bheag</b>	too small
<b>ro mhór</b>	too big

**Vocabulary**

<b>bòrd (m)</b>	/bo:rsd/	table
<b>bó (f)</b>	/bo:/	cow
<b>balach (m)</b>	/bałəx/	boy
<b>bàta (m)</b>	/ba:hṭə/	boat
<b>síde (f)</b>	/ʃi:d̪ə/	weather
<b>gorm</b>	/gɔrm/	blue

**Exercise 4**

Remove the brackets, make the necessary adjustments and translate:

- 1 bòrd (beag)
- 2 bó (mórr)
- 3 balach (math)
- 4 oidhche (dorcha)
- 5 bròg (salach)
- 6 bàta (dearg)
- 7 seann (bàta)
- 8 deagh (caileag)
- 9 droch (síde)
- 10 seann (càr) (gorm)

**Vocabulary**

<b>madaínn (f) mhath</b>	/mād̪iŋ vā/	good morning
<b>ospadal (m)</b>	/ɔspəd̪əl/	hospital
<b>nurs (m)</b>	/nʊrs/	nurse
<b>goirt</b>	/goɔ̄sdi/	sore
<b>ceàrr</b>	/k̄a:s/	wrong
<b>deas</b>	/d̄es/	right
<b>cí</b>	/kli:/	left
<b>beagan</b>	/begən/	a little
<b>cuideachd</b>	/kuđ̄əxg/	also
<b>teann</b>	/t̄auŋ/	tight
<b>cruaidh</b>	/kruəj/	hard
<b>ùr</b>	/u:r/	new
<b>suidh (vb)</b>	/suŋ/	sit down
<b>an-sin</b>	/əŋ ſin/	there
<b>basaidh (m)</b>	/basi/	basin
<b>an-seo</b>	/əŋ ſə/	here
<b>blàth</b>	/b̄a:ʃ/	warm
<b>glen</b>	/ḡlan/	fine, nice
<b>comhfhurtail</b>	/kɔ:ç̄əsðal/	comfortable
<b>tapadh leibh</b>	/t̄apəð l̄iv/	thank you

## COMHRADH (CONVERSATION)

*Iain aig an ospadal*

*Nurs* Madainn mhath. Is mise an nurs. Cò thusa?

*Iain* Is mise Iain.

*Nurs* Ciamar a tha thu?

*Iain* Chan eil mi gu math idir.

*Nurs* Dé a tha ceàrr?

*Iain* Tha mo chas goirt.

*Nurs* A' chas dheas no a' chas chli?

*Iain* An té dheas ach tha an té chli beagan goirt cuideachd.

*Nurs* Am bheil a' bhròg agad ro theann?

*Iain* Chan eil ach tha mo bhrògan ro chruaidh. Tha iad ùr, tha fios agaibh.

*Nurs* Suidh an-sin, ma-tha. Tha basaidh agam an-seo.

*Iain* O, tha sin glan. Tha an t-uisge blàth.

*Nurs* Am bheil sin comhfhuartail?

*Iain* Tha gu dearbh. Tapadh leibh.

## TRANSLATION

### John at the hospital

*Nurse* Good morning. I'm the nurse. Who are you?

*John* I'm John.

*Nurse* How are you?

*John* I am not well at all.

*Nurse* What's the matter?

*Nurse* My foot is sore.

*Nurse* The right foot or the left foot?

*John* The right foot but the left one is a little sore, too.

*Nurse* Is your shoe too tight?

*John* No, but my shoes are too hard. They are new, you know.

*Nurse* Sit down here then. I've got a basin here.

*John* Oh, that's nice. The water is warm.

*Nurse* Is that comfortable?

*John* It certainly is. Thank you.

## Lesson 3

### 17 Verbal nouns

With every verb (except the verb *tha*), there is an associated verbal noun which corresponds to participles in other languages. In most cases the verbal noun is formed by adding a suffix to the verb, although this is not always the case. Here are some examples:

#### VERB                    VERBAL NOUN

##### (a) VERB + adh

leugh	→ leughadh	reading
sgriobh	→ sgrìobhadh	writing
geàrr	→ gearradh	cutting
mol	→ moladh	praising
pòs	→ pòsadh	marrying
buail	→ bualadh	striking

##### (b) VERB + (a)inn, sinn, tinn

faic	→ faicinn	seeing
faigh	→ faighinn	getting
feuch	→ feuchainn	trying
tuig	→ tuigsinn	understanding
cluinn	→ cluinntinn	hearing

##### (c) VERB + ail, tail

gabh	→ gabhail	taking
fag	→ fagail	leaving
cum	→ cumail	keeping
tog	→ togail	lifting, building
lean	→ leantail <sup>1</sup>	following

##### (d) VERB + achadh

smaoinich	→ smaoineachadh	thinking
lag	→ lagachadh	weakening

<sup>1</sup>Also *leantainn*.

## (e) VERB + e

ith	→ ithe	eating
laigh	→ laighe	lying
suidh	→ suidhe	sitting
nigh	→ nighe	washing

## (f) VERB = verbal noun

seinn	→ seinn	singing
öl	→ öl	drinking
falbh	→ falbh	going away
fas	→ fas	growing
ruith	→ ruith	running

## (g) other forms

iarr	→ iarraidh	wanting
fuirich	→ fuireach	living
ceannaich	→ ceannach	buying
fairich	→ faireachdann	feeling
eugh	→ eughachd	shouting
dèan	→ dèanamh	doing, making
seas	→ seasamh	standing
tuit	→ tuiteam	falling

Some irregular verbs form their verbal nouns from different roots:

rach	→ dol	going
thig	→ tighinn	coming
abair	→ ràdh	saying

## 18 The present tense

The present tense in Gaelic is formed by using the verbal noun with the (auxiliary) verb **tha** as follows:

THA	SUBJECT	VERBAL NOUN PARTICLE	VERBAL NOUN
tha	mi	ag	éisteachd

I am listening, I listen

This literally means 'I am at listening'. In the present tense this periphrastic ('long') construction covers both the continuous and simple present. In other words, **tha mi ag éisteachd** can be translated as 'I am listening' or 'I listen'.

The verbal noun is preceded by **ag** when used with **tha** to form the

present tense. The final **g** of **ag** is not pronounced before a following consonant and is dropped in writing: **ag** → **a'**, e.g.:

tha mi a' sgriobhadh	I am writing, I write
tha Anna a' leughadh	Ann is reading, Ann reads

Here are some further examples:

**Tha Iain a' leughadh leabhar.**

John is reading a book, John reads a book.

**Am bheil Anna a' sgriobhadh litir?**

Is Ann writing a letter? Does Ann write a letter?

**Chan eil mi a' faicinn sion.**

I don't see anything.

**Tha mi a' cluinntinn ceòl brèagha.**

I hear lovely music.

**Chan eil iad a' dol a-mach.**

They are not going out, they do not go out.

**Am bheil Mairi a' fuireach ann an Glaschu?**

Does Mary live in Glasgow?

**Am bheil thu a' tuigsinn Gàidhlig?**

Do you understand Gaelic?

**Tha mi ag iarraidh im agus càise.**

I want butter and cheese.

As the term implies, verbal nouns may function as either nouns or verbs. As nouns they may be preceded by the definite article, e.g.:

an leughadh ( <i>m</i> )	the reading
an sgriobhadh ( <i>m</i> )	the writing
an t-öl ( <i>m</i> )	the drinking
an fhaireachdann ( <i>f</i> )	the feeling

## 19 'What do you want?', etc.

To ask a question what . . . ?, put **dé a** ('what is it that') in front of the verb as follows:

Dé a tha thu ag iarraidh?	What do you want?
Dé a tha thu a' dèanamh?	What are you doing?
Dé a tha thu a' ag?	What do you do?
Dé a tha thu ag Öl?	What are you drinking?
Dé a tha thu a' ag?	What do you drink?
Dé a tha thu a' faicinn?	What are you seeing?
Dé a tha thu a' ag?	What do you see?

## Vocabulary

Dùn Éideann	/dun e:dən/	Edinburgh
Fraingeis (m)	/frangjəs/	French
bàrdachd (f)	/ba:rsdəxg/	poetry
rannsachadh (m)	/raunəsəxəv/	research
cupa cofaidh (m)	/kuhpə kɔfi/	a cup of coffee
obair (f)	/obər/	work, working
ceart gu leòr	/k'ærst gə lɔ:r/	all right, O.K.

## Exercise 1

### Translate

- 1 What are you thinking?
- 2 Ann lives in Edinburgh.
- 3 Do you understand French?
- 4 John is writing poetry.
- 5 Mary is doing research.
- 6 Are you coming out?
- 7 They want a cup of coffee.
- 8 James works in Glasgow.
- 9 Do you feel all right?
- 10 I don't understand.

## 20 Definite nouns: definition

We say that a noun is definite if it is (a) a proper noun, e.g.: **Iain** John, **Glaschu** Glasgow, (b) preceded by the article, e.g.: **an tidsear** 'the teacher', (c) preceded by a possessive pronoun, e.g.: **mo mhàthair** 'my mother'.

## 21 More on the verb 'is' ('to be')

We have already dealt with is sentences of the following type:

IS	SUBJECT	PREDICATE
Is	mise	Iain.
Is	tusa	an tidsear.
Is	esan	am ministear againn.
Is	ise	mo mhàthair.
		I am John. You are the teacher. He is our minister. She is my mother.

Our sentences so far have included those where the subject is a pronoun (**mise**, **tusa**, etc.) and the predicate is a definite noun.

If the subject, however, is a definite noun instead of a pronoun and the predicate remains a definite noun, we use **se** (<**is** + **e**) rather than **is** and the same order of elements as before, as follows:

IS	SUBJECT	PREDICATE	
Se	Iain	an tidsear.	John is the teacher.
Se	m'athair	am ministear.	My father is the minister.
Se	Màiri	mo phiuthar.	Mary is my sister.
Se	Seumas	an sagart againn.	James is our priest.

To negate **se** sentences, replace **se** with **chan e**:

Chan e do bhràthair an sagart.	Your brother is not the priest.
Chan e Iain an tidsear.	John is not the teacher.
Chan e Seumas mo bhràthair.	James is not my brother.

To form the interrogative (positive), replace **se** with **an e**:

An e Domhall an tidsear?	Is Donald the teacher?
An e Anna do mhàthair?	Is Ann your mother?
An e am post d'athair?	Is the postman your father?

To form the interrogative (negative), replace **se** with **nach e**:

Nach e Iain am ministear?	Isn't John the minister?
Nach e Uilleam do bhràthair?	Isn't William your brother?
Nach e an sagart an caraid agad?	Isn't the priest your friend?

To answer any of the above questions beginning **an e** or **nach e**, the answer forms are always as follows:

POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
se yes	chan e no

In Lesson 2 we learnt several simple is sentences:

Is mise Iain.	I am John.
Is tusa Anna.	You are Ann.
Is esan Seumas.	He is James.
Is ise Peigi.	She is Peggy.
Is sinne an clas Gàidhlig.	We are the Gaelic class.
Is sibhse an tidsear.	You are the teacher.
Is iadsan Màiri agus Calum.	They are Mary and Calum.

We may note at this stage that **se** can replace **is** before the personal pronouns as follows:

Se mise Iain.	I am John.
Se thusa Anna.	You are Ann.

- Se esan Seumas.** He is James.  
**Se ise Peigi.** She is Peggy.  
**Se sinne an clas Gàidhlig.** We are the Gaelic class.  
**Se sibhse an tisear.** You are the teacher.  
**Se iadsan Màiri agus Calum.** They are Mary and Calum.

Note: **thusa** follows **se**, not **tusa**.

Similarly, **cha**, **an**, **nach** may be replaced by **chan e**, **an e**, **nach e** in which case **thu** (not **tu**) is used. Note also that **mise** is not lenited when it is preceded by **chan e**; **cha mhise** becomes **chan e mise**.

Here are some further examples:

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <b>Chan e mise Domhnall.</b>           | I am not Donald.              |
| <b>Chan e thusa Anna.</b>              | You are not Ann.              |
| <b>An e esan Iain?</b>                 | Is he John?                   |
| <b>An e ise Peigi?</b>                 | Is she Peggy?                 |
| <b>Nach e sibhse am ministear?</b>     | Aren't you the minister?      |
| <b>Nach e iadsan an clas Gàidhlig?</b> | Aren't they the Gaelic class? |

## Exercise 2

### Translate

- 1 I am John.
- 2 She is Ann.
- 3 Is he the teacher? Yes.
- 4 James is not my teacher.
- 5 Mary is the nurse.
- 6 Donald is her father.
- 7 Isn't William your son? No.
- 8 Catherine is the big sister.
- 9 You are small George.
- 10 Mary is their new minister.

## 22 Demonstratives

Gaelic, like Lowland Scots (a language related to English), distinguishes between 'this', 'that' and 'yon'; and also between 'here', 'there' and 'yonder'. The main difference between 'that' and 'yon' and between 'there' and 'yonder' in Gaelic is that the former are generally more specific in their reference, whereas the latter are usually more 'remote' in either spatial, temporal or emotional terms.

### (a) Demonstrative adjectives

These adjectives, like most other adjectives, follow the noun they qualify. However, they are not affected by lenition. Nouns followed by demonstrative adjectives are usually preceded by the definite article. The forms are as follows:

<b>an dealbh seo</b>	this picture
<b>an taigh sin</b>	that house
<b>a' bheinn ud</b>	yon mountain

The plural form of the article is **na**:

<b>na taighean seo</b>	these houses
<b>na dealbhannan sin</b>	those pictures
<b>na caileagan ud</b>	yon girls

In a string of adjectives, the demonstrative adjectives usually appear in final position:

<b>a' bheinn mhór àrd sin</b>	that big high mountain
<b>an dealbh bheag bhrèagha seo</b>	this small fine picture

### (b) Demonstrative pronouns

<b>seo</b>	this
<b>sin</b>	that
<b>siud</b>	that (yon)

There is a distinction between singular and plural forms. These are formed by placing the third person plural pronoun **iad** before the above demonstrative forms:

<b>iad seo</b>	these
<b>iad sin</b>	those
<b>iad siud</b>	those (yon)

It is also possible to distinguish between masculine and feminine singular forms although the basic demonstrative forms normally suffice. The forms are as follows:

<b>e seo</b>	this ( <i>masculine</i> )
<b>i seo</b>	this ( <i>feminine</i> )
<b>e sin</b>	that ( <i>masculine</i> )
<b>i sin</b>	that ( <i>feminine</i> )
<b>e siud</b>	that/yon ( <i>masculine</i> )
<b>i siud</b>	that/yon ( <i>feminine</i> )

The demonstrative pronouns act like other pronouns and nouns and therefore can be the subject (or object) of a verb, e.g.:

**Tha seo math.** This is good.

**Tha sin blasda.** That is tasty.

**Tha siud direach àlainn.** That is just beautiful.

Note: the demonstrative pronouns **seo**, **sin** and **siud** may also be used as the subject of an is sentence, in which case the **se** construction introduced earlier in this lesson is used, e.g.:

**Se seo Mairi.** This is Mary.

**Se sin Iain.** That is John.

**Se siud Anna.** That (yon) is Ann.

**Se** may be omitted before the demonstrative pronouns and so the following sentences often replace the above: (note that we can translate; 'this is' or 'here is', etc.)

**Seo Mairi.** This is Mary; here is Mary.

**Sin an tidsear.** That is the teacher; there is the teacher.

**Siud Iain.** That (yon) is John; there (yonder) is John.

### (c) Demonstrative adverbs

<b>an-seo</b>	here
<b>an-sin</b>	there
<b>an-siud</b>	yonder

### 'Where is . . .?'

Study the following phrases:

**Càite am bheil a' bhùth?** Where is the shop?

**Càite am bheil am banca?** Where is the bank?

**Càite am bheil oifis a' phuist?** Where is the post office?

**Càite am bheil an stèisean?** Where is the station?

**Càite am bheil an taigh-beag?** Where is the toilet?

Note the difference between:

**Tha an cat an-sin** The cat is there.

**Sin an cat** That is the cat; there is the cat.

### Vocabulary

<b>a' chaileag (f)</b>	/ə xalag/	the girl
<b>am balach (m)</b>	/əm baʎəx/	the boy
<b>a' bhùth (f)</b>	/ə vu:/	the shop

<b>an duine (m)</b>	/ən duinə/	the man
<b>am boireannach (m)</b>	/əm bor̄eŋnəx/	the woman
<b>an t-aran (m)</b>	/ən t̄aran/	the bread
<b>an sgian (f)</b>	/ən sḡian/	the knife
<b>am baile (m)</b>	/əm baile/	the town
<b>am baga (m)</b>	/əm bagə/	the bag
<b>a' bhasgaid (f)</b>	/ə vasgəd/	the basket
<b>an t-airgead (m)</b>	/ən t̄[er̄]ḡəd/	the money
<b>am manaidsear (m)</b>	/əm manəd̄[er̄]ə/	the manager
<b>a' bhròg (f)</b>	/ə vrɔ:g/	the shoe
<b>an làmh (f)</b>	/ən l̄a:v/	the hand
<b>a' chas (f)</b>	/ə xas/	the foot, leg
<b>an t-stùl (m)</b>	/ən t̄u:l/	the eye
<b>a-rithist</b>	/ə ri-əʃd̄i/	again

### Exercise 3

#### Translate

- 1 this girl
- 2 that shop
- 3 yon town
- 4 that woman there
- 5 this is my sister
- 6 there is the knife
- 7 the bread is yonder
- 8 there is that mountain again
- 9 this is cold
- 10 that is very good

### 23 Numerals

The basic numerals from zero to ten are as follows:

- 0 neoini
- 1 aon
- 2 dà
- 3 trì
- 4 ceithir
- 5 còig
- 6 sia
- 7 seachd
- 8 ochd
- 9 naoi
- 10 deich

If counting, and when there is no following noun, the numbers between one and ten prefix **a**, which lenites **dà** and prefixes **h-** to **aon** and **ochd**:

- 1 a h-aon or **aonan**
- 2 a dhà
- 3 a trì
- 4 a ceithir
- 5 a cóig
- 6 a sia
- 7 a seachd
- 8 a h-ochd
- 9 a naoi
- 10 a deich

The numbers from eleven to nineteen are formed by adding **deug** which corresponds to 'teen' in English as follows:

- 11 a h-aon deug eleven
- 12 a dhà dheug twelve
- 13 a trì deug thirteen
- 14 a ceithir deug fourteen
- 15 a cóig deug fifteen
- 16 a sia deug sixteen
- 17 a seachd deug seventeen
- 18 a h-ochd deug eighteen
- 19 a naoi deug nineteen

#### Exercise 4

Complete the following sums, writing the answers in words:

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| (a) $1 + 8 =$      | (e) $14 \div 2 =$  |
| (b) $2 + 3 =$      | (f) $12 + 7 =$     |
| (c) $8 - 2 =$      | (g) $10 \div 10 =$ |
| (d) $6 \times 3 =$ | (h) $7 + 8 =$      |

## 24 Adverbs of direction

Adverbs which denote position in relation to the speaker generally distinguish between forms which imply location and forms which imply motion. In some cases, motion to and away from the speaker is also differentiated.

### (a) 'Up' and 'down'

In words for 'up' and 'down', Gaelic makes a distinction between (i) position of being up or down and (ii) going 'up' and 'down', i.e. motion away from/towards the speaker.

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| (i) <b>shuas</b>    | up (location)                           |
| (ii) <b>suas</b>    | up, upwards (away from the speaker)     |
| (iii) <b>a-nuas</b> | up, upwards (towards the speaker)       |
| (i) <b>shios</b>    | down (location)                         |
| (ii) <b>sios</b>    | down, downwards (away from the speaker) |
| (iii) <b>a-nuas</b> | down, downwards (towards the speaker)   |

Note: **a-nuas** is used for both 'up' and 'down' which can be confusing at first. It is also useful to note that it is incorrect to say **a' dol a-nuas** or **a' tighinn sios**, although younger speakers sometimes use them. Note also that some dialects do distinguish between 'up' and 'down' (towards the speaker); these dialects use **a-nios** 'up', 'from below' (towards the speaker).

#### Examples:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Tha Iain shuas an staighre.</b>       | John is upstairs.                          |
| <b>Tha Anna a' dol suas an staighre.</b> | Ann is going up the stairs.                |
| <b>Tha Màiri a' tighinn a-nuas.</b>      | Mary is coming up,<br>Mary is coming down. |

### (b) 'Over here' and 'over there'

Gaelic makes a distinction in words for 'over here' and 'over there' between location and motion:

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>a-bhos</b> | over here (location at speaker)               |
| <b>a-nall</b> | (coming) over here (motion towards speaker)   |
| <b>thall</b>  | over there (location not at speaker)          |
| <b>a-null</b> | (going) over there (motion away from speaker) |

#### Examples:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Tha Anna a-bhos ann an Dùn Éideann.</b>    |  |
| Ann is over here in Edinburgh.                |  |
| <b>Tha Màiri a' tighinn a-nall á Glaschu.</b> |  |
| Mary is coming over here from Glasgow.        |  |

**Tha Màiri thall ann an Glaschu.**

Mary is over there in Glasgow.

**Tha Anna a' dol a-null a Ghlaschu.**

Ann is going over there to Glasgow.

These adverbs of motion are frequently used with the demonstrative adverbs **an-seo**, **an-sin** and **an-siud** which we met earlier in this lesson, e.g.:

**Tha Màiri a-bhos an-seo.** Mary is over here.

**Tha Iain thall an-sin.** John is over there.

There is a difference between **a-bhos** and **an-seo** on the one hand and between **thall** and **an-sin** (**an-siud**) on the other. The demonstrative adverbs are definite and specific in their reference; the directional adverbs **thall** and **a-bhos** are non-specific in their reference. **Thall** means 'not in the vicinity of the speaker'; **a-bhos** means 'in the vicinity of the speaker' without specifying the exact location.

'Here and there' is translated in Gaelic as '**thall is a-bhos**'.

### (c) 'In' and 'out'

Gaelic makes a distinction in words for 'in' and 'out' between location and motion:

**a-staigh** in, inside (location)

**a-steach** in, inwards (motion)

**a-muigh** out, outside (location)

**a-mach** out, outwards (motion)

Not all varieties of Gaelic use **a-steach**. Indeed there is a tendency to use **a-staigh** to convey both location and motion.

**Tha mi a-staigh an-dràsta.** I am in now.

**Tha Anna a' tighinn a-steach.** Ann is coming in.

**Tha Iain a-muigh a' cluich ball-coise.** John is out playing football.

**Tha Màiri a' dol a-mach.** Mary is going out.

## 25 Days, months and seasons

### Days

**Di-Luain**

Monday

**Di-Màirt**

Tuesday

**Di-Ciadaoin**

Wednesday

**Diar-Daoin**

Thursday

**Di-hAoine**

Friday

**Di-Sathairne**

Saturday

**Di-Domhnaich/Latha na Sàbaid**

Sunday

Note that all of the days of the week are stressed on the second syllable as the hyphen indicates.

The use of **Di-Domhnaich** and **Latha na Sàbaid** depends to a certain extent on social factors although there are no absolutely clear lines of demarcation between the use of both. Generally speaking **Di-Domhnaich** tends to be used by Catholics and by Episcopalians, **Latha na Sàbaid** by Presbyterians.

### Months

**am Faoilteach**

January

**an Gearran**

February

**am Màrt**

March

**an Giblean**

April

**an Céitean**

May

**an t-Ògmhìos**

June

**an t-Iuchar**

July

**an Lùnastal**

August

**an t-Sultain**

September

**an Damhair**

October

**an t-Samhain**

November

**an Dubhlachd**

December

Note that the names of the months all appear with the article.

### Seasons

**an t-Earrach**

Spring

**an Samhradh**

Summer

**am Foghar**

Autumn

**an Geamhradh**

Winter

The seasons are all masculine. Study the following:

**as t-Earrach**

in Spring

**as t-Samhradh**

in Summer

**as t-Fhoghar**

in Autumn

BUT

**anns a' Gheamhradh**

in Winter

## 26 Emphatic suffixes

We saw in Lesson 2 how Scottish Gaelic uses emphatic suffixes to give emphatic or contrastive power to the pronouns, e.g.:

**Tha Iain beag ach tha mise mór.** John is small but *I* am big.

The emphatic pronouns consist of the pronoun followed by an emphatic suffix as follows:

PRONOUN	EMPHATIC SUFFIX	EMPHATIC PRONOUN
mi	+ se	→ mise <i>I</i>
thu	+ sa	→ thusa <i>you</i>
e	+ san	→ esan <i>he</i>
i	+ se	→ ise <i>she</i>
sinn	+ ne	→ sinne <i>we</i>
sibh	+ se	→ sibhse <i>you</i>
iad	+ san	→ iadsan <i>they</i>

Emphatic suffixes are also used with other parts of speech to give them emphatic or contrastive power. They are principally used with (a) prepositional pronouns and (b) following nouns preceded by possessive pronouns. In each case they emphasise the pronominal element. The emphatic suffixes are the same as those used with the pronouns listed above except that -sa rather than -se is used with the first person singular. Note that the hyphen does not indicate a change in stress. The italics in the English translations indicate emphatic or contrastive use:

an cù agamsa	mo chù-sa	my dog
an cat agadsa	do chat-sa	your cat
an taigh aigesan	a thaigh-san	his house
an càr aicese	a càr-se	her car
an t-aodach againne	ar n-aodach-ne	our clothes
an leabhar agaibhse	ur leabhar-se	your book
an sgoil acasan	an sgoil-san	their school

Note that a hyphen is not usually used with prepositional pronouns.

### Vocabulary

thig (vb)	/hig/	come
an toiseach	/ən tɔ:jəx/	first
siúcar (m)	/ʃu:hkər/	sugar
mas e ur toil e	/maʃ e ər tɔ:l e/	please (polite, formal)

doras (m)	/dɔ:rs/	door
eile	/e:lə/	other, else
a-nis	/ə niʃ/	now
bainne (m)	/ba:nə/	milk
ugh (f), uighean (pl)	/u/, /wɪ:jən/	egg, eggs
orainsear (m), orainsearan (pl)	/ɔ:rənʃər/, /ɔ:rənʃərən/	oranges
có mheud?	/ko: viäd/	how many (+ singular form of the noun)
brot (m)	/brɔ:ht/	soup
duine (m), daoine	/dʊ:nə/, /dʒu:nə/	man/person, men/people
a-nochd	/ə nɔ:xg/	tonight
gu	/gə/	to
biadh (m)	/bɛ:d/	food
dad (m)	/dad/	anything
salann (m)	/sa:lən/	salt
sceilp (f)	/sɛ:lɒp/	shelf
banca (m)	/bæn:gə/	bank
oifis a' phuist (f)	/ɔ:fɪs ə fuʃd/	post office
beannachd leibh	/bja:nɔ:xg lviv/	good-bye
mar sin leibh	/mər sin lviv/	good-bye to you

### COMHRADH

**Anna ann am bùth**

**Fear na bùtha** Thig a-staigh. Tha e fuar an-diugh.

**Anna** Tha, tha e fuar agus fliuch.

**Fear na bùtha** Dé a tha sibh ag iarraidh?

**Anna** An toiseach, ma-tha, tha mi ag iarraidh siúcar.

Càite am bheil e, mas e ur toil e?

**Fear na bùtha** Tha thall an-sin aig an doras. Dé eile a tha sibh ag iarraidh?

**Anna** Bainne agus uighean agus orainsearan.

**Fear na bùtha** Cò mheud ugh?

**Anna** A sia, tha mi a' smaoineachadh.

**Fear na bùtha** Glé mhath. Cò mheud orainsear?

**Anna** A seachd. Tha mi ag iarraidh uinneanan cuideachd. Tha mi a' dèanamh brot. Tha daoine a' tighinn a-nochd gu biadh.

**Fear na bùtha** A-nis seo bainne, uighean, orainsearan agus uinneanan. Am bheil sibh ag iarraidh dad eile?

- Anna* Tha. Tha mi ag iarraidh salann. Càite am bheil e?  
*Fear na bùthá* Tha e shuas air an sceilp sin. Am bheil sibh ag  
 iarraidh dad eile?
- Anna* Chan eil, tapadh leibh. Tha gu leòr agam. O, am  
 bheil fios agaibh càite am bheil am banca agus oifis  
 a' phuist?
- Fear na bùthá* Tha, shìos an rathad. Beannachd leibh.
- Anna* Mar sin leibh.

## TRANSLATION

## Ann in a shop

- Shopkeeper* Come in. It's cold today.  
*Ann* Yes, it's cold and wet.  
*Shopkeeper* What do you want?  
*Ann* Well, first I want sugar. Where is it please?  
*Shopkeeper* It's over there at the door. What else do you want?  
*Ann* Milk and eggs and oranges.  
*Shopkeeper* How many eggs?  
*Ann* Six, I think.  
*Shopkeeper* Very good. How many oranges?  
*Ann* Seven. I want onions too. I'm making soup. People  
 are coming to dinner tonight.  
*Shopkeeper* Now here are milk, eggs, oranges and onions. Do  
 you want anything else?  
*Ann* Yes. I want salt. Where is it?  
*Shopkeeper* It's up there on that shelf. Do you want anything  
 else?  
*Ann* No, thank you. I have enough. Oh, do you know  
 where the bank and the post-office are?  
*Shopkeeper* Yes, down the road. Good-bye.  
*Ann* Good-bye.

## Lesson 4

## 27 Past tense of 'tha'

We have already met the present tense of the verb **tha** 'to be'. The past tense forms are listed below with the present tense forms for comparison:

	Past	Present
Positive	bha	tha
Negative	cha robh	chan eil
Interrogative (positive)	an robh?	am bheil
Interrogative (negative)	nach robh?	nach eil

## 27a Independent and dependent verbal forms

It will be clear that there is a correspondence between **tha** and **bha** on the one hand, and between **(bh)eil** and **robh** on the other. **Tha** and **bha** appear 'independently' and usually appear at the beginning of an utterance. **Tha** and **bha** are therefore called independent verbal forms. **(Bh)eil** and **robh** on the other hand only appear after certain particles (e.g.: **cha**, **an**, **nach**) and their occurrence 'depends' on the occurrence of these particles. **(Bh)eil** and **robh** are therefore called dependent verbal forms. The distinction between independent and dependent forms is fundamentally important in the verbal system of Gaelic.

Here are some examples of the past tense of **tha**:

Bha Iain sgith	John was tired
Cha robh e blàth	It was not warm
An robh Seumas an-seo?	Was James here?
Nach robh an t-airgead agad?	Did you not have the money?

## 27b Past tense of 'tha' with the verbal noun

In Lesson 3 we saw that the periphrastic construction (in the present tense) involving the verb **tha** and the verbal noun covered both the continuous tense and the simple present tense. When the past tense of **tha** is used in the periphrastic construction, however, the meaning is continuous past, not simple past. In other words,

**bha mi ag òl** means 'I was drinking' and not 'I drank'. Here are some further examples:

- Bha Iain a' sgrìobhadh litir.** John was writing a letter.  
**Cha robh Anna a' dèanamh sòn.** Ann wasn't doing anything.  
**An robh sibh a' seinn an-raoir?** Were you singing last night?  
**Bha mi ag ithe mo bhracaist.** I was eating my breakfast.

The following verbal nouns when used in the periphrastic construction in the past correspond to the simple past tense in English: *iarraidh* 'wanting', *fuireach* 'living', *tuigsinn* 'understanding', *smaoineachadh* 'thinking'. Consider the following examples:

<b>bha mi ag iarraidh aran</b>	I wanted bread
<b>bha Anna a' fuireach ann an Glaschu</b>	Ann lived in Glasgow
<b>bha mi a' tuigsinn</b>	I understood
<b>bha Iain a' smaoineachadh</b>	John thought

## 28 Irregular verbs: simple past tense

The simple past tense is not formed by using a periphrastic construction; the simple past consists of one-word (short) verbal forms. There are 12 irregular verbs in Scottish Gaelic. We have already met the verbs 'to be' *is* and *tha*. One of the distinguishing features of irregular verbs, as we will see, is that their independent and dependent forms are frequently formed from different roots. It is possible to group the past tense formation of irregular verbs into the following four groups:

- (i) Verbs whose independent and dependent forms differ substantially:

INDEPENDENT	DEPENDENT
<b>bha</b>	<b>robh</b> was
<b>chunnaic</b>	<b>faca</b> saw
<b>chaidh</b>	<b>deach</b> went

- (ii) Verbs whose independent and dependent forms begin with *th-* and *d-* respectively:

INDEPENDENT	DEPENDENT
<b>thàinig</b>	<b>dàinig</b> came
<b>thug</b>	<b>dug</b> gave, brought
<b>thuirt</b>	<b>duirt</b> said

Note: some prefer to spell the dependent forms with an initial *t-* or even *d'-th*.

- (iii) Verbs whose dependent form is formed by prefixing *do* (or *d'*) to the independent form:

INDEPENDENT	DEPENDENT
<b>ràinig</b>	<b>do ràinig</b> reached
<b>rug</b>	<b>do rug</b> caught
<b>rinn</b>	<b>do rinn</b> did, made
<b>fhuaire</b>	<b>d'fhuaire</b> got

- (iv) INDEPENDENT DEPENDENT  
**chuala**      **cuala**      heard

Subjects including subject pronouns follow the above verbal forms as follows:

<b>chuala mi</b>	I heard
<b>chuala t(h)u</b>	you heard
<b>chuala e, i</b>	he, she heard
<b>chuala sinn</b>	we heard
<b>chuala sibh</b>	you heard
<b>chuala iad</b>	they heard

<b>Bha Seumas an-seo.</b>	James was here.
<b>Cha robh Anna sgith.</b>	Ann was not tired.
<b>Chunnaic sinn Mairi.</b>	We saw Mary.
<b>Am faca iad an cù.</b>	Did they see the dog?
<b>Chaidh Iain a-mach.</b>	John went out.
<b>Cha deach Uilleam a-mach.</b>	William did not go out.
<b>Ràinig i Dùn Éideann.</b>	She reached Edinburgh.
<b>An do ràinig sibh Glaschu?</b>	Did you reach Glasgow?
<b>Thàinig iad dhachaigh.</b>	They came home.
<b>Cha dàinig iad riagh.</b>	They never came.
<b>Thug Anna pòg do Raghall.</b>	Ann gave a kiss to Ronald.
<b>An dug a mhàthair airgead dha?</b>	Did his mother give him money?
<b>Thuirt Iain sin.</b>	John said that.
<b>Cha duirt mise sin.</b>	I did not say that.
<b>Rug mi air Catriona.</b>	I caught Catherine.
<b>An do rug thu air Uilleam?</b>	Did you catch William?
<b>Rinn mi an obair agam.</b>	I did my work.

An do rinn thusa an obair agadsa. Did you do your work?

Fhuair mi an t-airgead. I got the money.

An d'fhuair e sion? Did he get anything?

Chuala mi an t-òran brèagha. I heard the beautiful song.

An cuala sibh Màiri an-raoir? Did you hear Mary last night?

Note: nach lenites f in faca, e.g.:

Nach fhaca Iain am bus? Did John not see the bus?

Note: cha\* becomes chan\* before faca, e.g.:

Chan fhaca mi Seumas. I didn't see James.

Note: cha\* lenites only the dependent form cuala, e.g.:

Cha chuala mi thu. I didn't hear you.

Note: both tu/thu may be used with the following verbal forms:  
chunnaic, faca; thàinig, dàinig; ràinig, do ràinig; chuala, cuala.

Note that the simple past tense can sometimes be translated as a perfect, e.g.:

an dàinig Iain fhathast? has John come yet?

an cuala t(h)u an naidheachd? have you heard the news?

The following text contains instances of all of the irregular verbs (in bold) in the past tense (positive). Study it carefully. Learning it by heart may be a useful way of learning the irregular verbs:

#### POSITIVE:

##### **Am Meàirleach ('the Robber')**

Bha mi aig an taigh Di-Luain. Chuala mi fuaim shuas an staighre. Chaidh mi suas. Chunnaic mi meàirleach. Rinn e bùrach. Thuit mi: 'Có thusa?'. Thàinig am Poileas agus rug iad air a' mheàirleach. Fhuair am meàirleach buille. Thug e an t-airgead air ais. Ràinig iad an stèisean. Bha e duilich.

I was at home on Monday. I heard a noise upstairs. I went up. I saw a robber. He made a mess. I said: 'Who are you?'. The police came and they caught the robber. The robber got a thump. He gave the money back. They reached the station. He was sorry.

#### NEGATIVE:

Cha robh mi aig an taigh Di-Luain. Cha chuala mi fuaim shuas an staighre. Cha deach mi suas. Chan fhaca mi meàirleach. Cha do rinn e bùrach. Cha duirt mi: 'Có thusa?'. Cha dàinig am Poileas agus cha do rug iad air a' mheàirleach. Cha d'fhuair am meàirleach buille. Cha dug e an t-airgead air ais. Cha do ràinig iad an stèisean. Cha robh e duilich.

I wasn't at home on Monday. I didn't hear a noise upstairs. I didn't go up. I didn't see a robber. He didn't make a mess. I didn't say: 'Who are you?'. The police didn't come and they didn't catch the robber. The robber didn't get a thump. He didn't give the money back. They didn't reach the station. He wasn't sorry.

#### Exercise 1

Rewrite the above passage in the interrogative (positive and negative).

#### Vocabulary

chuir mi seachad bliadhna	/χuɪ̯r̩ mi ʃeəχəd bliəχnə/	I spent a year
fhathast	/ha-əs̩t̩/	yet
an-raoir	/ən-χav̩r̩j/	last night

#### Exercise 2

##### Translate

- 1 I was happy.
- 2 I saw Ann yesterday.
- 3 John went out.
- 4 They came in.
- 5 We spent a year there.
- 6 You didn't do your work.
- 7 Did you get the money?
- 8 Did you not reach Edinburgh yet?
- 9 She didn't say anything.
- 10 I heard Mary last night.

#### 29 Answering questions

In Lesson 1 we saw that when answering a question in Scottish Gaelic, we simply repeat the main verb of the question, usually

without the subject. To answer 'yes', we simply repeat the independent form of the verb. To answer 'no', we repeat the dependent form of the verb preceded always by the negative particle *cha*. Consider the following examples:

An robh thu aig a' chéilidh?	Were you at the ceilidh?
Bha	Yes
Cha robh	No
Am faca t(h)u Seumas?	Did you see James?
Chunnaic	Yes
Chan fhaca	No
An do rinn thu an obair?	Did you do the work?
Rinn	Yes
Cha do rinn	No

### 30 Imperative

The imperative form of the verb is the form which is used for giving orders. It is also the most basic form of the verb. It is the imperative form which appears as the head word in dictionaries. We will see later that all tenses (other than periphrastic constructions) of regular verbs are derived from the imperative form. For this reason the imperative is sometimes referred to as the verbal root.

The two imperative forms which are most frequently used in Gaelic are the 2nd person singular and plural forms, corresponding to the use of the pronouns *thu* and *sibh*. The plural (also the polite or formal) form is formed by adding -(a)ibh to the singular form as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
òl	drink
glean	clean
seas	stand
suidh	sit
ith	eat
dùin	close

The singular imperative form is made emphatic by using the pronoun *thusa* as follows:

Ól thusa an tì agad.	you drink your tea.
Suidh thusa an-sin.	you sit there.

### 30a Negative imperative

To negate the imperative forms, simply place *na* before the above forms e.g.:

Na òl sin.	Don't drink that.
Na suidh an-sin.	Don't sit there.
Na dùin an doras fhathast.	Don't close the door yet.
Na gabh thusa dragh.	Don't <u>you</u> be worried.

The most commonly used imperative forms of the irregular verbs are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
bi	bithibh
rach	rachaibh
dèan	dèanaibh
faigh	faighibh
thig	thigibh
thoir	thoiribh

The last two verbs, *thig* and *thoir* become *dig* and *doir* after the negative *na*:

Na dig an-seo.	Don't come here.
Na digibh an-seo.	Don't ( <i>pl</i> ) come here.
Na doir airgead dha.	Don't give him money.
Na doiribh airgead do Pheigi.	Don't ( <i>pl</i> ) give money to Peggy.

### 30b Other imperative forms

There are also first person plural and third person imperatives. The first person plural imperative is formed by adding *(e)amaid* to the verbal root (= imperative second singular form):

seasamaid	let us stand
suidheamaid	let us sit

The third person imperative is formed by adding *(e)adh* to the verbal root. This imperative form must always be followed either by one of the pronouns *e* (*esan*), *i* (*ise*), *iad* (*iadsan*) or by a noun, e.g.:

seinneadh e	let him sing
suidheadh ise	let <i>her</i> sit
seasadh iad	let them stand
thigeadh Anna	let Ann come

### Example of the imperative

cuir	put
cuireadh e	let him put
cuireamaid	let us put
cuiribh	put
cuireadh iad	let them put

### Vocabulary

ti (/)	/ti:/	tea
dinnear (m)	/dɪ:nər/	dinner
suas	/suə:s/	up
síos	/ʃiə:s/	down
sàmhach	/sā:vxə/	quiet
sion; càil (m)	/ʃián/, /ʃián/; /ka:l/	anything
an-diugh	/ən d'u:/	today
an-dé	/ən d'e:/	yesterday
a-màireach	/ə ma:r'əx/	tomorrow
mas e do thoil e	/mə sə də həl e/	please ( <i>lit</i> 'if it is your wish') (informal)

### Exercise 3

#### Translate

- 1 drink your tea
- 2 eat your dinner
- 3 stand up
- 4 sit down
- 5 be quiet
- 6 come in
- 7 give that to James
- 8 don't do anything
- 9 find it today
- 10 close the door please

### 31 Past tense of 'is'

The Gaelic verb **is** is a defective verb since it only occurs in the present, past and conditional tenses. It has no future tense forms. The past and conditional forms are identical. The past tense of **is** is

**bu\*** (**b'** before vowels and **f + vowel**). **Bu** does not usually lenite a following **d**, **t**, **s**. Here are some examples:

Bu mhise an tidsear.	I was the teacher.
Bu tusa am ministear.	You were the minister.
B'esan an saor.	He was the joiner.
B'ise an dotair.	She was the doctor.
Bu sinne an clas Gàidhlig.	We were the Gaelic class.
Bu sibhse an clas Beurla.	You were the English class.
B'iadsan an clas Gearmaitlis.	They were the German class.

### 31a Idioms with 'is'

There are very many idioms in Gaelic involving the use of nouns, adjectives and prepositions with the verb **is**. Here is one example which we will study in more detail in the next lesson:

is toil      le      Iain cofaigh  
is      pleasing      with      John coffee  
John likes coffee

This could be translated literally as 'it (i.e. coffee) is pleasing to John'

If we substitute **bu** for **is** in the above idiom, we get past or 'conditional' meaning:

bu toil le Iain cofaigh	John would like coffee
	OR John liked coffee

Watch out for other examples of **bu** below in our discussion of idioms involving the preposition **do** 'to'. We will translate **bu** as 'conditional' in what follows.

### 32 Prepositional pronouns: 'do\*' ('to, for')

dhomh	to me	dhuinn	to us
dhut	to you	dhuibh	to you (pl)
dha	to him	dhaibh	to them
dhi	to her		

### 32a Idioms involving 'do'

The preposition **do** lenites a following noun, e.g.: **do Sheumas** 'to James'.

## (a) can

The basic pattern is:

IS +	URRAINN +	DO*	+ SUBJ
is	urrainn	do	Chalam
is	capability	to	Calum
'Calum can'			

Study the following phrases:

Is urrainn do Sheumas.	James can.
Is urrainn dhomh.	I can.
B'urrainn do Mhàiri.	Mary could.
B'urrainn dha.	He could.

## NEGATIVE FORMS:

Chan urrainn do Dhomhnall.	Donald cannot.
Cha b'urrainn dhi.	She couldn't.

## INTERROGATIVE (POSITIVE) FORMS:

An urrainn dhut?	Can you?
Am b'urrainn do Shile?	Could Sheila?

## INTERROGATIVE (NEGATIVE) FORMS:

Nach urrainn do Dhomhnall?	Can't Donald?
Nach b'urrainn dhaibh?	Couldn't they?

## ANSWERS:

an urrainn ...? / nach urrainn ...?	is urrainn      yes
	chan urrainn      no
am b'urrainn ...? / nach b'urrainn ...?	b'urrainn      yes
	cha b'urrainn      no

## (b) to know (a person)

The basic pattern is:

IS +	AITHNE +	DO +	SUBJ +	OBJ
is	aithne	do	Sheumas	Màiri
is	knowledge	to	James	Mary

James knows Mary

Study the following phrases:

Is aithne do Mhàiri Seumas.	Mary knows James.
Is aithne dhomh e.	I know him.

## NEGATIVE FORMS:

Chan aithne do Dhomhnall an duine sin.	Donald doesn't know that man.
--	-------------------------------

Chan aithne dha Seumas.	He doesn't know James.
-------------------------	------------------------

## INTERROGATIVE (POSITIVE) FORMS:

An aithne dhut Peigi?	Do you know Peggy?
An aithne dhuibh a chéile?	Do you know one another?

## INTERROGATIVE (NEGATIVE) FORMS:

Nach aithne dhut am ministear?	Do you not know the minister?
Nach aithne dhi e?	Does she not know him?

## ANSWERS:

an/nach aithne do ...?	is aithne      yes
	chan aithne      no

## (c) should

The basic pattern is:

BU +	CHÒIR +	DO*	+ SUBJ +
bu	chòir	do	Mhàiri
is	proper	for	Mary

Mary should

Study the following phrases:

Bu chòir dha.	He should.
Bu chòir do Pheigi.	Peggy should.

## NEGATIVE FORMS:

Cha bu chòir do Dhomhnall.	Donald shouldn't.
Cha bu chòir dhut.	You shouldn't.

## INTERROGATIVE (POSITIVE) FORMS:

Am bu chòir dhomh?	Should I?
Am bu chòir do Mhàrtainn?	Should Martin?

### INTERROGATIVE (NEGATIVE) FORMS:

Nach bu chòir dhuinn?	Shouldn't we?
Nach bu chòir dhomh?	Shouldn't I?

### ANSWERS:

am bu chòir ...? / nach bu chòir ...?	bu chòir      yes
	cha bu chòir      no

## 33 Vocative (or address form)

When addressing a person or calling them by their name, Gaelic uses a special form of the noun, called the vocative (or address form). All vocative forms are preceded by the unstressed vocative particle **a\*** which lenites.<sup>1</sup> **A\***, like other unstressed particles is usually elided (i.e. not pronounced) in the vicinity of other vowels in speech and frequently in writing, but is retained here for reasons of clarity.

### (a) Feminine personal nouns

Feminine personal nouns are simply lenited in the vocative.

### VOCATIVE

a Mhórag	Morag
a Chatriona	Catherine
a Mhàiri	Mary
a Sheonag	Joan
a Sheonaid	Janet
a Anna <sup>2</sup>	Ann

### (b) Masculine proper nouns

Masculine proper nouns are lenited and the final consonant slenderised:

<sup>1</sup>Recall that an asterisk is used in this Course to show that a word lenites. See Pronunciation pages 9–11.

<sup>2</sup>Pronounced Anna.

### VOCATIVE

a Sheumais	James
a Dhomhnaill	Donald
a Raghnaill	Ronald
a Chaluim	Calum
a Iain <sup>3</sup>	John
a Mhata	Mathew

### Exercise 4

Put the following names into the vocative:

1 Donnchadh (m)	Duncan
2 Mairead (f)	Margaret
3 Micheal (m)	Michael
4 Murchadh (m)	Murdo
5 Síne (f)	Sheena

## 34 The reflexive pronoun 'fhéin' ('self')

The reflexive pronoun **fhéin** is used with personal, possessive and prepositional pronouns as follows. Note that **fhìn** (or **fhéin** in some dialects) is used with the first person singular and plural.

mi fhìn	myself
thu fhéin	yourself
e fhéin	himself
i fhéin	herself
sinn fhìn	ourselves
sibh fhéin	yourselves
iad fhéin	themselves

Note that **sibh + fhéin** is generally pronounced as **si + péin**.

The reflexive pronoun **fhéin** is used with both possessive constructions as follows:

an cù agam fhìn	OR	mo chù fhìn	my own dog
an cat agad fhéin		do chat fhéin	your own cat
an taigh aige fhéin		a thaigh fhéin	his own house
an càr aice fhéin		a càr fhéin	her own car
an t-aodach againn fhìn		ar n-aodach fhìn	our own clothes
an leabhar agaibh fhéin		ur leabhar fhéin	your own book
an sgoil aca fhéin		an sgoil fhéin	their own school

<sup>3</sup>Pronounced Iain.

Note that **agaibh** + **fhéin**, etc. is generally pronounced as **aga** + **péin**.

**Fhéin** is also used adverbially with emphatic meaning. Study the following:

<b>gu dearbh</b>	certainly
<b>gu dearbh fhéin</b>	certainly (more emphatic)
<b>tha am biadh fhéin daor</b>	the food itself is expensive/even the food is expensive
<b>tha an deoch daor fhéin</b>	the drink is terribly expensive

### Vocabulary

<b>oileanach (m), oileanaich (pl)</b>	/vlanəx/, /vlaniç/	student, students
<b>coinneachadh (vn)</b>	/kynəχəy/	meeting
<b>taigh-òsta (m)</b>	/t̪ɪj ɔ:sdə/	hotel, pub
<b>guth (m)</b>	/gu/	voice
<b>a-staigh</b>	/ə s̪d̪v̪j/	inside, in
<b>fhastast</b>	/ha-əs̪d̪/	yet
<b>a dh'aithghearr</b>	/ə yaçəs/	soon
<b>naidheachd (f)</b>	/n̪e-əxg/	news
<b>suas ri chéile</b>	/suəs r̪i çe:lə/	going out together, courting
<b>firinn (f)</b>	/fi:r̪iŋ/	truth
<b>ged-ta</b>	/gə ðə:/	though, however
<b>intintineach</b>	/i:ŋt̪iŋnəx/	interesting
<b>mar-tha</b>	/m̪ər̪ ha:/	already
<b>uisge-beatha (m)</b>	/uʃg̪jə bəhə/	whisky
<b>gloine (f)</b>	/g̪lənə/	glass
<b>fion (m)</b>	/fian/, /fiən/	wine
<b>dearg</b>	/d̪i[ara]g/	red
<b>geal</b>	/g̪aʃ/	white
<b>siuga (m)</b>	/ʃvg̪ə/	jug
<b>falamh</b>	/fəʃəv̪/	empty
<b>deigh (f)</b>	/d̪i:v̪j/	ice
<b>mas urrainn dhut</b>	/mas uʃiŋ yuhŋ/	if you can
<b>leth-phinnt (f)</b>	/ðe fi:ŋt̪/	a half pint
<b>draibheadh (vn)</b>	/draivəy/	driving

### COMHRADH

#### Oileanaich a' coinneachadh ann an taigh-òsta

**Anna** An dàinig Beathag fhastast? Chuala mi an guth aice, bha mi a' smaoineachadh.

- Màiri** Tha i a-muigh an-sin a' bruidhinn ach cha dàinig i a-staigh fhastast. Tha i a' tighinn a dh'aithghearr.
- Anna** An cuala tu an naidheachd? Tha Beathag agus Iain suas ri chéile.
- Màiri** O, chan eil mi a' creidsinn sin.
- Anna** An fhìrinn, ged-ta.
- Màiri** Nach eil sin intintineach?
- Anna** A-nis càite am bheil Domhnall?
- Màiri** Thàinig esan mar-tha. Tha e thall an-sin a' ceannach uisce-beatha.
- Anna** A Dhomhnaill, an d'fhuair thu gloine dhomhsa?
- Domhnall** Fhuair. Fhuair mi fion dearg dhut, a Anna. Agus seo fion geal dhutsa a Mhàiri. Thoir dhomh siuga uisce, a Sheumais, agus faigh dhomh gloine fhalamh agus deigh mas urrainn dhut.
- Anna** Dé a tha thu fhéin ag òl an-sin a Dhomhnaill?
- Domhnall** Chan eil agam ach leth-phinnt agus gloine orains. Tha mi a' draibheadh a-nochd.

### TRANSLATION

#### Students meeting in a pub

- Ann** Has Rebecca come yet? I heard her voice, I thought.
- Mary** She's out there talking but she hasn't come in yet. She's coming soon.
- Ann** Have you heard the news? Rebecca and John are courting.
- Mary** Oh, I don't believe that.
- Ann** The truth, though.
- Mary** Isn't that interesting.
- Ann** Now where's Donald?
- Mary** He has come already. He's over there buying whisky.
- Ann** Donald, did you get a glass for me?
- Donald** Yes. I got red wine for you Ann. And here's white wine for you, Mary. Give me a jug of water, James, and fetch me an empty glass and some ice if you can.
- Ann** What are you drinking there yourself, Donald?
- Donald** I've only got a half pint and a glass of orange. I'm driving tonight.

## Lesson 5

### 35 Preposition 'ann an' ('in')

So far we have met the prepositional pronouns associated with the preposition **aig** 'at' and **do** 'to'. The prepositional pronouns associated with the preposition **ann an** 'in' are as follows:

<b>annam</b>	in me	<b>annainn</b>	in us
<b>annad</b>	in you	<b>annaibh</b>	in you ( <i>pl</i> )
<b>ann</b>	in him/it	<b>annta</b>	in them
<b>innte</b>	in her/it		

Note: **ann** 'in it' can be used as an adverb meaning 'there' and in statements concerning 'existence', e.g.: **bha Iain ann an-raoir** 'John was there last night'. **Tha thu ann** 'you are there/in existence' is often used as an initial statement in a conversation or as a form of address.

The preposition **ann an**, unlike other prepositions, combines with the possessive pronouns **mo\***, **do\***, **a\***, **a**, **ar**, **ur**, **an/am**. The forms are as follows:

<b>'nam*</b>	in my	<b>'nar</b>	in our
<b>'nad*</b>	in your	<b>'nur</b>	in your ( <i>pl</i> )
<b>'na*</b>	in his	<b>'nan/m</b>	in their
<b>'na</b>	in her		

### 35a Some idioms

These forms (i.e. **'nam**, **'nad**, etc.) are used in a small number of idioms involving the verb **tha** and verbal nouns. The idioms involved normally denote a state or a condition such as: sleep, being awake, lying, running, standing, stretching out, sitting:

<b>Tha mi 'nam chadal.</b>	I am asleep.
<b>Tha thu 'nad dhùisg.</b>	You are awake.
<b>Tha e 'na laighe.</b>	He is lying down.
<b>Tha i 'na ruith.</b>	She is running.
<b>Tha sinn 'nar seasamh.</b>	We are standing (up).
<b>Tha sibh 'nur sineadh.</b>	You are stretched out.
<b>Tha iad 'nan suidhe.</b>	They are sitting (down).

### Exercise 1

- 1 John is asleep.
- 2 Are you awake?
- 3 Mary is lying down.
- 4 He was standing there.
- 5 They are sitting down.

### 36 More on the use of 'is'

We have already dealt with the following types of **is** sentence:

IS	SUBJECT	PREDICATE	
<b>Is/se</b>	<b>mise</b>	<b>Iain</b>	<b>I am John</b>
<b>Se</b>	<b>Seumas</b>	<b>an tidsear</b>	<b>James is the teacher</b>
<b>Se</b>	<b>Anna</b>	<b>mo phiuthar</b>	<b>Ann is my sister</b>

So far we have only dealt with cases where the predicate is a definite noun. We will now deal with sentences where the predicate is an indefinite noun, i.e. a noun which is (a) not a proper noun, (b) not preceded by the article and (c) not preceded by a possessive pronoun. We will therefore be dealing with sentences like 'John is a teacher' and 'she is a doctor'.

So far our **is** sentences have involved the order: **is + subject + predicate**. When the predicate is indefinite, however, the order is reversed and becomes: **is + predicate + subject**. In such sentences the verb **tha** and the preposition **ann an** are used as follows:

<b>Se</b>	<b>Predicate</b>	<b>Relative</b>	<b>tha</b>	<b>ann an</b>	<b>Subject</b>
<b>se</b>	<b>tidsear</b>	<b>a</b>	<b>tha</b>	<b>ann an</b>	<b>Iain</b>
<b>it is</b>	<b>a teacher</b>	<b>that</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>in</b>	<b>John</b>
					<b>'John is a teacher'</b>

The **a** which appears before **tha** is a relative pronoun meaning 'that'. It is explained further in Lesson 9. More examples:

<b>Se croitear a tha ann an Seumas.</b>	<b>James is a crofter.</b>
<b>Se nars a tha ann an Anna.</b>	<b>Ann is a nurse.</b>
<b>Se ministear a tha ann an Uilleam.</b>	<b>William is a minister.</b>
<b>Se oilleanach a tha ann am Mairi.</b>	<b>Mary is a student.</b>
<b>Se seinneadair a tha ann an Ailean.</b>	<b>Alan is a singer.</b>
<b>Se actair a tha ann an Seonag.</b>	<b>Joan is an actor.</b>

If the subject is a personal pronoun, we use the prepositional pronouns associated with the preposition **ann an**. 'I am a teacher' in Gaelic is literally 'it is a teacher that is in-me': **se tidsear a tha annam**. Here are some further examples:

<b>Se oileanach a tha annam.</b>	I am a student.
<b>Se seinneadair a tha annad.</b>	You are a singer.
<b>Se actair a tha ann.</b>	He is an actor.
<b>Se dotair a tha innte.</b>	She is a doctor.

Note: there is a certain amount of ambiguity in cases like **Se nurs a tha ann**, since **ann** can refer to 'him' or 'it'. **Se nurs a tha ann** could therefore be translated as 'he is a nurse' or 'it is a nurse'. It depends on what **ann** refers to.

#### Vocabulary

<b>croitear (m)</b>	/kroht'erj/	crofter
<b>dotair (m)</b>	/dɒtərj/	doctor
<b>borbair (m)</b>	/b[ɔ:b]berj/	barber, hairdresser

#### Exercise 2

##### Translate

- 1 John is a minister.
- 2 Ann is a singer.
- 3 Joan is a teacher.
- 4 William is a crofter.
- 5 Donald is a student.
- 6 I am a student also.
- 7 She is a doctor.
- 8 You (*pl*) are a hairdresser.
- 9 Are you a teacher?
- 10 Is he a minister?

#### 36a Negative and question forms of 'se'

To negate **se**, replace **se** with **chan e**. To form the positive interrogative, replace **se** with **an e**. To form the negative interrogative, replace **se** with **nach e**.

Study the following forms:

<b>An e tidsear a tha annad?</b>	Are you a teacher?
<b>Chan e saor a tha annam.</b>	I am not a carpenter.
<b>Nach e ministear a tha ann an Iain?</b>	Isn't John a minister?

#### Answering questions **an e ... / nach e ...**

We have already noted that there is no single word for 'yes' or 'no' in Scottish Gaelic. To answer a question beginning **an e ...?** or **nach e ...?**, the answer for 'yes' and 'no' is **se** and **chan e**, respectively. Study the following examples:

<b>An e tidsear a tha annad?</b>	Are you a teacher?
<b>Se.</b>	Yes.
<b>Chan e.</b>	No.
<b>An e saor a tha ann an Iain?</b>	Is John a carpenter?
<b>Se.</b>	Yes.
<b>Chan e.</b>	No.
<b>Nach e seinneadair a tha ann an Anna?</b>	Isn't Ann a singer?
<b>Se.</b>	Yes.
<b>Chan e.</b>	No.

#### 36b Alternative construction

There is an alternative way of dealing with the above type of 'is' sentence by using the verb **tha** instead of the verb **is**.

**THA + SUBJECT + {ANN AN + POSS PRON (agreeing with subject)}**  
+ PREDICATE

<b>Tha Iain</b>	<b>'na</b>	<b>mhinistear</b>
John is in his minister		
John is a minister		

Here are some further examples:

<b>Tha Anna 'na seinneadair.</b>	Ann is a singer.
<b>Tha Seonag 'na tidsear.</b>	Joan is a teacher.
<b>Tha Uilleam 'na chroitear.</b>	William is a crofter.
<b>Tha Domhnall 'na oileanach.</b>	Donald is a student.
<b>Tha mi 'nam oileanach cuideachd.</b>	I am a student also.
<b>Tha i 'na seinneadair.</b>	She is a singer.
<b>Tha sibh 'nur tidsear.</b>	You ( <i>formal</i> ) are a teacher.
<b>Am bheil e 'na mhinistear?</b>	Is he a minister?

### 36c 'It is ...'

To translate any sentence 'it is ...', we use the formula **se ... a tha ann**, irrespective of the nature of the predicate ... (i.e. whether it is definite or indefinite):

**Se cù a tha ann.** It's a dog.  
**Se Seumas a tha ann.** It's James.  
**Se an tidsear ùr a tha ann.** It's the new teacher.

To negate or ask questions, we simply replace **se** with **chan e, an e, nach e** as usual:

**Chan e ministear a tha ann.** It's not a minister.  
**An e càr a tha ann?** Is it a car?  
**Nach e call a tha ann?** Isn't it a loss/pity?

### 37 Past tense

The past tense of sentences like **se tidsear a tha ann an Iain** 'John is a teacher' or **se Iain a tha ann** 'it is John' is formed by putting **tha** in the past tense, e.g.:

**Se tidsear a bha ann an Iain.** John was a teacher.  
**Se oileanach a bha annam.** I was a student.  
**Se Anna a bha ann.** It was Ann.  
**Chan e Mairi a bha ann.** It wasn't Mary.  
**An e Uilleam a bha ann?** Was it William?

### 38 'This is', 'that is'

We have already learnt (see Lesson 3) how to translate 'this is ...' and 'that is ...' sentences when the predicate is a definite noun, e.g.:

**(Is) seo Iain** OR **Se seo Iain** this is John  
**(Is) sin an tidsear** OR **Se sin an tidsear** that is the teacher

When the predicate is an indefinite noun, we use the construction, introduced earlier on in this lesson, i.e. **se X a tha (ann an) seo/sin/siud**, the only difference being that the preposition **ann an** is omitted:

SE	+	PREDICATE	+	A THA	+	SEO/SIN/SIUD
se		cù		a tha		seo
this is a dog						

Here are some further examples:

**Se ionad-spòrs a tha sin.** That's a sports centre.  
**Se sionnach a bha siud.** That was a fox.

### 39 To ask the question: 'What is ...?':

**Dé a tha ann?** What is it?  
**Dé a tha seo?** What is here/what is this?  
**Dé a tha sin?** What is there/what is that?  
**Dé a tha siud?** What is there (yonder)/what is that (yon)?

### 40 Fronting

Fronting occurs when a word is moved from its usual position nearer to the front of the sentence. The normal order of elements in a Gaelic sentence is as follows:

VERB	+	SUBJECT	+	OBJECT	+	IND OBJECT	+	ADVERB
chunnaic	mi	Seumas	air a' bhus	an-dé				
saw	I	James	on the bus	yesterday				

'I saw James on the bus yesterday'

It is, however, possible to place any of these elements at the beginning of the sentence for special emphasis. Such fronted sentences are very common indeed in Gaelic and are therefore important to learn at this stage. Fronted elements are preceded either by **se** or **sann** and are 'joined' to the remainder of the sentence by a relative pronoun **a** 'that'. The use of **se** and **sann (<is + ann)** is straightforward and is as follows:

- (a) **se** is used to front pronouns and nouns
- (b) **sann** is used to front everything else, e.g.: adjectives, adverbs, prepositional phrases, verbal phrases, etc.

Here is how we would front each of the elements in the sentence:

**Chunnaic mi Seumas air a' bhus an-dé:**

**mi**

**Se mise a chunnaic Seumas air a' bhus an-dé.** OR

**Is mise a chunnaic Seumas air a' bhus an-dé.**

**It is I who saw James on the bus yesterday.**

Note that the emphatic forms of the pronoun are used with **se** as before.

**Seumas**

**Se Seumas a chunnaic mi air a' bhus an-dé.**

**It is James that I saw on the bus yesterday.**

**air a' bhus**

**Sann air a' bhus a chunnaic mi Seumas an-dé.**

**It is on the bus that I saw James yesterday.**

*an-dé***Sann an-dé a chunnaic mi Seumas air a' bhus.**

It is yesterday that I saw James on the bus.

*chunnaic***Sann a chunnaic mi Seumas air a' bhus an-dé.**

I saw James on the bus yesterday.

Here are some further examples of fronted sentences:

<b>Se Seumas a thàinig a-staigh.</b>	It is James that came in.
<b>Se cù a chunnaic mi.</b>	It is a dog that I saw.
<b>Se ise a chuala mi.</b>	It is she that I heard.
<b>Sann sgìth a tha Seumas.</b>	It is tired that James is.
<b>Sann an-dé a chunnaic mi Anna.</b>	It is yesterday that I saw Ann.
<b>Sann an Glaschu a tha Màiri.</b>	It is in Glasgow that Mary is.
<b>Sann agamsa a tha an leabhar.</b>	It is at me that the book is/ <i>I have the book.</i>
<b>Sann a thàinig Iain anmoch.</b>	It is that John came late/ John (really) did come late.

Note that all 'it is' sentences involve the relative a 'that'.

Study the following negative and interrogative forms:

<b>Chan ann sgìth a tha mi.</b>	It is not tired that I am.
<b>An ann an-dé a chunnaic thu Seumas?</b>	Was it yesterday that you saw James?
<b>Nach ann agadsa a bha an iuchair?</b>	Did you not have the key? ( <i>lit</i> 'Was it not at you that the key was?')

**\*\*\* IMPORTANT \*\*\***

Compare:

<b>Se Seumas a tha ann.</b>	It is James.
<b>Se Seumas a chunnaic mi.</b>	It is James that I saw.

In 'it is ...' sentences when the predicate is followed by a relative clause, a **tha ann** is not used.**Exercise 3**

Front each of the elements sinn, Anna a' seinn, aig a' chéilidh, an-raoir, chuala in the following sentence:

**Chuala sinn Anna a' seinn aig a' chéilidh an-raoir.**

We heard Ann singing at the ceilidh last night.

**41 Answering questions**To answer a question beginning with **an e?** ('Is it?'), **nach e?** ('Is it not?') or **an ann?** ('Is it?'), **nach ann?** ('Is it not?'), the answers are:

QUESTION	ANSWER	
	YES	NO
<b>an e, nach e?</b>	<b>se</b>	<b>chan e</b>
<b>an ann, nach ann?</b>	<b>sann</b>	<b>chan ann</b>

**42 Ownership**We have already learnt how to translate 'have' sentences; we use the verb **tha** and the preposition **aig** 'at'. However, if we want to say that something 'belongs to' someone as opposed to someone 'having' something, we use **sann** and the preposition **le** 'with'. To say 'James owns the book' or 'the book belongs to James', in Scottish Gaelic we use a fronted sentence: 'it is with James that the book is':**Sann le Seumas a tha an leabhar.** The book belongs to James.

Study the following phrases:

<b>Sann le Màiri a tha an càr.</b>	The car belongs to Mary.
<b>Sann le mo bhràthair a tha a' bhùth.</b>	The shop belongs to my brother.

**42a 'Who owns?'**

To ask the question 'who owns ...?', we say:

<b>Có leis a tha an leabhar?</b>	Who owns the book? ( <i>lit</i> 'With whom is the book?')
<b>Có leis a tha seo?</b>	Who owns this?

## 42b Prepositional pronouns 'le' ('with')

leam	with me	leinn	with us
leat	with you	leibh	with you
leis	with him	leotha	with them
leatha	with her		

Study the following phrases:

- Sann leamsa a tha an cat sin. That cat is mine/belongs to me.  
 Sann leatsa a tha an cù sin. That dog is yours/belongs to you.  
 Sann leinne a tha an t-airgead. The money is ours/belongs to us.

Note that the prepositional pronouns are usually used with the emphatic suffixes in this construction.

## 42c Idioms involving 'le' ('with')

### (i) Thank you

Study the following phrases:

- tapadh leat thank you (*informal*)  
 tapadh leibh thank you (*pl or formal*)

### (ii) I like, I would like

Study the following phrases:

- Is toil le Ailean ceòl-mór. Alan likes 'pibroch' (*lit* 'big music').  
 Is toil leinn dealbhchluich. We like drama.  
 Bu toil le Catriona deoch orains. Catherine would like a drink of orange.  
 Bu toil leotha geama ball-coise. They would like a game of football.

Some dialects use **is caomh** and **bu chaomh** instead of **is toil** and **bu toil** respectively in the above phrases.

### NEGATIVE FORMS:

- Cha toil (cha chaomh) leam uisge-beatha. I don't like whisky  
 Cha bu toil leam rola. I wouldn't like a bread roll.

### INTERROGATIVE (POSITIVE) FORMS:

- An toil (an caomh) leat an fhidheall? Do you like the fiddle?  
 Am bu toil leat pinnt? Would you like a pint?

### INTERROGATIVE (NEGATIVE) FORMS:

- Nach toil le Alasdair lionn? Doesn't Alasdair like beer?  
 Nach bu toil leat aran? Wouldn't you like (some) bread?

### ANSWERS:

an toil ...?/nach toil ...?	is toil	yes
	cha toil	no
am bu toil .../am bu toil ...	bu toil	yes
	cha bu toil	no

### (iii) I prefer, I would prefer

Study the following phrases:

- Is fheàrr le Iain aran donn. John prefers brown bread.  
 Is fheàrr leatha tì na cofaigh. She prefers tea to coffee.  
 B'fheàrr le Anna feòil na iasg. Ann would prefer meat to fish.  
 B'fheàrr liom sgadan. I would prefer herring.

### NEGATIVE FORMS:

- Chan fheàrr le Sile golf. Sheila doesn't prefer golf.  
 Cha b'fheàrr leis drama. He wouldn't prefer a dram (drink).

### INTERROGATIVE (POSITIVE) FORMS:

- An fheàrr leat am buntàta? Do you prefer potatoes?  
 Am b'fheàrr leat fion? Would you prefer wine?

### INTERROGATIVE (NEGATIVE) FORMS:

- Nach fheàrr le Anna dannsa? Doesn't Ann prefer dancing?  
 Nach b'fheàrr le Uilleam buntàta? Wouldn't William prefer potatoes?

### ANSWERS:

an fheàrr ...?/ nach fheàrr ...?	is fheàrr	yes
	chan fheàrr	no
am b'fheàrr ...?/ nach b'fheàrr ...?	b'fheàrr	yes
	cha b'fheàrr	no

## (iv) I don't mind, it doesn't matter to me

Study the following phrases:

**Is caingeis le Calum.** Calum doesn't mind, it doesn't matter to Calum.

**Is caingeis leam.** I don't mind.

**Tha mi caingeis** is also used for the latter.

**Vocabulary**

<b>lionn</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/ʎu:n/	beer
<b>donn</b>	/dou:n/	brown
<b>dannsa</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/dauŋsə/	dancing
<b>feòil</b> ( <i>f</i> )	/fjɔ:l/	meat
<b>ceòl-mór</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/k̪ɔ:l mo:r/	pibroch

**Exercise 4**

Translate the following:

- 1 Is toil leam a' Ghàidhlig.
- 2 Is fheàrr leatha Iain.
- 3 Am b'fheàrr leat lionn?
- 4 Am bu toil leat cupa ti?
- 5 Chan fheàrr leotha aran donn.
- 6 Nach toil le Anna dannsa?
- 7 Cha toil leamsa feòil.
- 8 B'fheàrr liom lionn na uisge-beatha.
- 9 An toil leat Run Rig?
- 10 Nach b'fheàrr leat ceòl-mór?

**43 The weather**

The weather *side* (*f*) or *aimsir* (*f*) is an important part of daily conversation in Gaelic. Most conversations begin with comments on the weather. Here are some useful examples:

- |                                    |                     |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Se latha brèagha a tha ann.</b> | It is a lovely day. |
| <b>Se latha fuar a tha ann.</b>    | It is a cold day.   |
| <b>Se latha fluich a tha ann.</b>  | It is a wet day.    |
| <b>Se latha blàth a tha ann.</b>   | It is a warm day.   |

Alternatively, we can simply use the verb *tha* as follows:

**Tha e brèagha an-diugh.** It is fine today.

**Tha e fuar an-diugh.** It is cold today.

**Tha e fluich an-diugh.** It is wet today.

**Tha e blàth an-diugh.** It is warm today.

The feminine pronoun *i* rather than *e* is used in some dialects to refer to the weather in the above phrases.

**44 Prepositions**

Prepositions may be classified into two groups according to whether they lenite a following noun or not:

DO NOT LENITE A FOLLOWING NOUN		LENITE A FOLLOWING NOUN	
<b>aig</b>	at	<b>bho*</b>	from
<b>air</b>	on	<b>fo*</b>	under
<b>á</b>	out of, from	<b>do*</b>	to, into, for
<b>ann an</b>	in	<b>de*</b>	of
<b>le</b>	with, by	<b>mu*</b>	about
<b>ri</b>	against†	<b>ro*</b>	before
<b>gu</b>	to (the point of)	<b>tro*</b>	through

†The meaning of *ri* changes according to idiom, e.g.: *bruidhinn ri* 'speak to', *tachair ri* 'meet with', etc.

Some examples

<b>aig balla</b>	at a wall	<b>bho Sheumas</b>	from James
<b>air séithear</b>	on a chair	<b>fo bhaga</b>	under a bag
<b>á Glaschu</b>	from Glasgow	<b>do Mhàiri</b>	to Mary
<b>ann an cabhag</b>	in a hurry	<b>ro chàr</b>	before a car
<b>le Seumas</b>	with James	<b>tro dhoras</b>	through a doorway

Note: *do* and *de* prefix *dh'* to a following vowel or *fh-* e.g.: *do dh'Anna* 'to Ann', *de dh'fhalt* 'of hair', *do dh'Iain* 'to John'.

*Do\** is frequently reduced to *a\** especially before place names, e.g.:

**a Ghlaschu** to Glasgow

**a Dhùn Éideann** to Edinburgh

The preposition *ann an* is frequently reduced to *an* (am before labials) before placenames, e.g.:

**an Glaschu** in Glasgow

**an Dùn Éideann** in Edinburgh

**Vocabulary**

taigh (m)	/t̪yj/	house
bòrd (m)	/bo:rsd/	table
duine (m)	/d̪uŋə/	man
baile (m)	/balə/	town
àm (m)	/aum/	time
Inbhir Nis	/iŋər niʃ/	Inverness
geata (m)	/g̪ehtə/	gate
càr (m)	/ka:r/	car

**Exercise 5****Translate**

- 1 in a house
- 2 on a table
- 3 with a man
- 4 through a town
- 5 before James
- 6 from time to time
- 7 to Inverness
- 8 from Edinburgh
- 9 at a gate
- 10 under a car

**45 More prepositional pronouns: 'air'**

orm	on me	oirnn	on us
ort	on you	oirbh	on you ( <i>pl</i> )
air	on him/it	orra	on them
oirre	on her/it		

(i) The preposition air is frequently used in the following expressions expressing hunger, thirst, etc. or physical conditions which are generally to one's disadvantage.

Tha an t-acras orm.	I am hungry. ( <i>lit</i> 'The hunger is on-me')
Tha am pathadh ort.	You are thirsty.
Tha an cnatan air.	He has a cold.
Tha an t-eagal oirre.	She is afraid.
Tha cabhag oirnn.	We are in a hurry.

(ii) Air is also used to express 'wearing clothes, etc.':

Tha còta snog oirre.	She is wearing a nice coat.
Tha peitein air Iain.	John is wearing a jumper.

**Tha brògan àrda orra.**

They are wearing boots.

**Tha ad air.**

He is wearing a hat.

(iii) Air is also used to ask someone's name:

**Dé an t-ainm a tha ort?**

What is your name?

(*lit* 'What name is on you?')

**Se Iain a tha orm.**

John is my name.

OR

**Tha, Iain.**

John.

**(iv) Dislikes, loathes**

IS + BEAG + AIR + SUBJ + OBJ  
is      beag      air      Màiri      feoil

Mary dislikes meat

Here are some further examples:

is beag air Seumas còcaireachd James dislikes/loathes cooking  
is beag orm an leabhar sin I dislike that book

**(v) Hurry up**

Greas ort! Hurry up! (*informal*)  
Greas aibh! Hurry up! (*pl or formal*)

**Vocabulary**

port-adhair (m)	/pɔ:tsd̪ a-ər̪/	airport
a-null thairis	/ə nu:ɿ har̪ɪʃ/	abroad (motion to)
Paras	/parəs/	Paris
seall dhomh	/sauɿ ɭ̪v̪/	show (to) me
cairt-shiubhail (f)	/ka:sd̪ ɭ̪v̪/	passport
mas e do thoil e	/maʃ e ðə ho:l e/	please (informal)
ceart gu leòr	/k̪a:sd̪ gə ɭ̪ɔ:r̪/	fine, right enough
Glaschu	/gla:sxu:/	Glasgow
Dùn Éideann	/d̪u:n e:d̪ən/	Edinburgh
obair (f)	/obər̪/	work
tidsear (m)	/tid̪ʃər̪/	teacher
fear-lagha (m)	/fer̪ l̪v̪ə/	lawyer
baga (m), bagaichean (pl)	/bagə/, /bagiçən/	bag, the bags
suidheachan (m)	/su:ʃəxan/	seat
faisg air	/fa:s̪g̪ i:r̪/	near

uinneag (f)	/uŋag/	window
is caingeis leam	/əs kain̪jɪg̪eʃ lə:m/	I don't care, it's all the same
cadal (vn)	/kadəʃ/	sleep
is beag orm	/s beg [ɔrɔ]m/	I dislike, I don't care for
plèan (m), plèanaichean (pl)	/ple:n/, /ple:niçən/	plane, planes
co-dhiubh	/ko ju:/	anyway, however
na gabh dragh	/nə gav drv̪/	don't worry
sam bith	/səm bi/	any, at all
aimsir (f)	/[em̪ɪʃ]ər/	weather
turas (m)	/tʊrəs/	trip, journey
beannachd leat	/bjæn̪əxg̪ laht/	good-bye, farewell
mar sin leat fhéin	/mər ſin laht he:n/	the same to you

## COMHRADH

### Port-adhair

Oifigeach	Càite am bheil thu a' dol?
Iain	Tha mi a' dol a-null thairis a Pharas.
Oifigeach	Seall dhomh an tiocaid agad agus do chait-shiubhail, mas e do thoil e.
Iain	Seo agad i.
Oifigeach	Ceart gu leòr. Sann á Glaschu a tha thu, an ann?
Iain	Sann. Ach tha mi a' fuireach ann an Dùn Éideann.
Oifigeach	Agus dé an obair a tha agad an-sin?
Iain	Se tidsear a bha annam ach tha mi 'nam fhear-lagha a-nis.
Oifigeach	An ann leatsa a tha na bagaichean sin uile?
Iain	Sann ach am fear seo.
Oifigeach	Am bu toil leat suidheachan faisg air uinneag?
Iain	B'fheàrr leam suidheachan eile ach is caingeis leam. Tha an cadal orm agus is beag orm plèanaichean co-dhiubh.
Oifigeach	Na gabh thusa dragh sam bith. Tha an aimsir math.
	Turas math dhut agus beannachd leat.
Iain	Mar sin leat fhéin.

### TRANSLATION

#### At the airport

Officer	Where are you going?
John	I'm going abroad to Paris.

Officer	Show me your ticket and your passport, please.
John	Here it is.
Officer	Fine. You're from Glasgow?
John	Yes. But I live in Edinburgh.
Officer	And what's your job there?
John	I was a teacher, but I'm now a lawyer.
Officer	Are all those bags yours?
John	Yes, except this one.
Officer	Would you like a seat near a window?
John	I'd prefer another seat but it's all the same. I'm sleepy and I don't like planes anyway.
Officer	Don't you worry at all. The weather's good. Good journey to you and good-bye.
John	The same to you.

## Lesson 6

### 46 The prepositional case

Gaelic has a prepositional case, which is used after most prepositions. The only parts of speech which regularly change form after prepositions are feminine nouns and the article. Masculine nouns do not change form in the prepositional case. The use of the prepositional case of feminine nouns is disappearing in Gaelic and in many dialects is confined to a handful of singular feminine nouns and then usually only when the definite article precedes.

The prepositional form of the article may affect the initial consonant of a following noun. We have actually met the prepositional form of the article already; it is **an\*** (irrespective of the gender of the following noun), which as you will recall is the form of the feminine nominative singular article. The forms are:

<b>a' + lenition</b>	before all lenitable consonants (except d t s f), i.e. b c g m p
<b>an t-</b>	before 's' (s sl sr sn, NOT sg sp st)
<b>an + lenition</b>	before 'f'
<b>an</b>	otherwise, i.e. before d n t l r and all vowels

Some examples

<b>am bòrd</b> the table	<b>air a' bhòrd</b> on the table
<b>an céilidh</b> the ceilidh	<b>aig a' chéilidh</b> at the ceilidh
<b>an sagart</b> the priest	<b>air an t-sagart</b> on the priest
<b>an t-sràid</b> the street	<b>air an t-sràid</b> on the street

Note that the above applies to all prepositions whether they themselves lenite an immediately following noun or not, e.g.:

<b>air càr</b> on a car	<b>air a' chàr</b> on the car
<b>fo chàr</b> under a car	<b>fon a' chàr</b> under a car

Most prepositions change form before the article with the exception of **air** and **aig**. These may be classified into two groups as follows:

#### (a) Prepositions which add -s before the definite article:

Preposition	Preposition before the article
<b>á</b>	<b>ás</b>
<b>ann an</b>	<b>anns</b>

<b>le</b>	→ <b>leis</b>
<b>ri</b>	→ <b>ris</b>
<b>gu</b>	→ <b>gus</b>

#### (b) Prepositions which add -n before the definite article:

Preposition	Preposition before the article
<b>bho</b>	→ <b>bhon</b>
<b>fo</b>	→ <b>fon</b>
<b>mu</b>	→ <b>mun</b>
<b>ro</b>	→ <b>ron</b>
<b>tro</b>	→ <b>tron</b>

Note that the prepositions **do** and **de** change form slightly:

<b>do</b>	→ <b>dhan</b>
<b>de</b>	→ <b>dhen</b>

Before we proceed to look at more examples, it will be well to explain what we mean by some feminine nouns changing form in the prepositional case, especially when preceded by the article. Feminine nouns which end in a consonant are slenderised following prepositions (see **Introduction: sounds**). Note that this slenderisation may alter the preceding vowel (see **Appendix 1**).

Some examples:

Nominative singular feminine	Prepositional form: singular
<b>cas</b>	→ <b>cois</b> foot
<b>bas</b>	→ <b>bois</b> palm
<b>làmh</b>	→ <b>làimh</b> hand
<b>cluas</b>	→ <b>cluaís</b> ear
<b>bròg</b>	→ <b>bròig</b> shoe
<b>caileag</b>	→ <b>caileig</b> girl
<b>cailleach</b>	→ <b>caillich</b> old woman

### LITERARY GAELIC

In practice this slenderisation of nouns following prepositions is confined to a handful of nouns, including the above examples. The slenderisation is far more common in literary Gaelic.

Watch out for more examples in the samples below (marked with P).

Some examples of prepositions + article:

<b>ás a' bhaile</b>	out of the town
---------------------	-----------------

anns a' Ghàidhlig	in the Gaelic <sup>1</sup>
leis a' mhiniestar	with the minister
ris an t-sagart	against/with† the priest
fon a' bhòrd	under the table
dhan a' chaileig (P)	to the girl
ron an fhear	before the man
mun an taigh	about the house
tron an latha	through the day
anns an òran	in the song
aig an uinneig (P)	at the window

†Recall the translation of *ri* depends on the idiom with which it is used.

Note: **bhon an**, **fon an**, **dhan an** etc. are frequently reduced to **bhon**, **fon**, **dhan**, e.g.:

fon bhòrd	under the table
dhan chaileig (P)	to the girl

### Vocabulary

seòmar (m)	/ʃɔ:mər/	chamber, room
airgead (m)	/[ər'ɪəg̊d̊]/	money
Beurla (/)	/bju:s̊ə/	English
craobh (/)	/krɔ:w/v/	tree

### Exercise 1

#### Translate

- 1 at the door
- 2 in the room
- 3 with the boy
- 4 to the girl
- 5 before the ceilidh
- 6 with the money
- 7 in the car
- 8 in (the) English
- 9 under a tree
- 10 through the town

<sup>1</sup>Gaelic uses both **ann an Gàidhlig** 'in Gaelic' and **anns a' Ghàidhlig** 'in the Gaelic' for English 'in Gaelic'.

### 47 Prepositions which are followed by the nominative: 'gun' ('without'); 'mar' ('like'); 'gu ruige' ('to')

Most, but not all, prepositions are followed by the prepositional form. Some prepositions are followed by the genitive as we will see later (see Section 62a). Others are followed by the nominative, e.g.: **gun**(\*) 'without', **mar\*** 'like' and **gu ruige** 'to'. **Gun** may or may not lenite according to dialect. **Mar\*** does lenite a following noun. (Some northern dialects use **man** for **mar**; it does not lenite.) Here are some examples:

gun f(h)acal	without a word
gun sgilling	without a penny
gun an t-airgead	without the money
mar dhuine	like a man
mar chat	like a cat
mar am fiadh	like the deer
gu ruige an t-Òban	to Oban
gu ruige a' Ghearmailt	to Germany

The difference between the use of the prepositional and the nominative form after certain prepositions is seen in the following examples:

leis a' chaillich (P)	with the old woman
mar a' chailleach	like the old woman
anns an Òban (P)	in (the) Oban
gu ruige an t-Òban	to Oban

Note the following idioms involving **gun**:

gun teagamh	without doubt, certainly
gun fhiosta do	unknown to
Thàinig Iain gun fhiosta dhomh.	John came unknown to me.

### 48 The past tense of regular verbs: independent forms

In Lesson 4 we met the continuous past (a periphrastic construction) and also the simple past tense of irregular verbs. The simple past tense of regular verbs is derived from the root of the verb, which in Gaelic is the imperative 2nd singular form. We will see later that the simple future and conditional/past habitual tenses are also derived from the verbal root.

To form the independent form of the past tense of a regular verb, lenite (see **Introduction: sounds**) the initial consonant of the root, e.g.:

#### *Imperative Past*

<b>brist</b>	<b>Bhrist Seumas an uinneag.</b>	James broke the window.
<b>dùin</b>	<b>Dhùin Anna an doras.</b>	Ann closed the door.
<b>ceannaich</b>	<b>Cheannaich Iain am pàipear.</b>	John bought the paper.
<b>gabh</b>	<b>Ghabh am balach òran.</b>	The boy sang a song.
<b>coisich</b>	<b>Choisich an nighean a-mach.</b>	The girl walked out.
<b>bruidhinn</b>	<b>Bhruidhinn Màiri.</b>	Mary spoke.

Note: some dialects have **bris** rather than **brist** for the verb 'break'.

If the verb begins with an unlenitable consonant, e.g.: **l, n, r**, the initial remains unchanged in writing, e.g.:

<b>leugh</b>	<b>Leugh Domhnall an leabhar.</b>	Donald read the book.
<b>nigh</b>	<b>Nigh Màiri a làmhan.</b>	Mary washed her hands.
<b>ruith</b>	<b>Ruith Calum a-mach.</b>	Calum ran out

If the verb begins with a vowel or **f** followed by a vowel, then the verb is preceded by **dh'** as follows:

<b>innis</b>	<b>Dh'innis Mórag dhomh.</b>	Morag told (to) me.
<b>ith</b>	<b>Dh'ith Seòras am biadh aige.</b>	George ate his food.
<b>òl</b>	<b>Dh'òl Uilleam pinnt.</b>	William drank a pint.
<b>fón</b>	<b>Dh'fhlón Iain.</b>	John phoned.

Note: the past is a simple past tense. It implies a completed action in the past and does **not** have continuous or progressive meaning. **Bhrist Seumas** means 'James broke', not 'James was breaking'.

The pronouns are used just as with the verb **tha**. Note that the subject always follows the verb in Scottish Gaelic.

<b>Dhùin mi an doras.</b>	I closed the door.
<b>Ghabh thu òran.</b>	You sang a song.
<b>Dh'ith e am biadh aige.</b>	He ate his food.
<b>Ruith i a-mach.</b>	She ran out.
<b>Cheannaich sinn aran.</b>	We bought (some) bread.
<b>Choisibh sibh air a' chabhsair</b>	You walked on the pavement.
<b>Dh'ionnsaich iad a' Ghàidhlig.</b>	They learnt (the) Gaelic.

#### **Exercise 2**

##### *Translate*

- 1 James closed the window.
- 2 Ann walked home.
- 3 Mary bought the paper.
- 4 Catherine drank her tea.
- 5 John sang a song.
- 6 Calum read the paper.
- 7 He told me.
- 8 I learnt Gaelic.
- 9 She ate bread.
- 10 William ran and closed the door.

#### **49 Some more prepositional pronouns**

##### *ri 'to'*

<b>rium</b>	to me	<b>ruinn</b>	to us
<b>riut</b>	to you	<b>ruibh</b>	to you
<b>ris</b>	to him	<b>riutha</b>	to them
<b>rithe</b>	to her		

It is difficult to translate the preposition **ri** exactly as its sense varies according to idiom. See below for examples.

##### *do 'to, for'*

<b>dhomh</b>	to me	<b>dhuinn</b>	to us
<b>dhut</b>	to you	<b>dhuibh</b>	to you
<b>dha</b>	to him	<b>dhaibh</b>	to them
<b>dhi</b>	to her		

#### **50 Verbs and prepositions**

There are very many verbs in Gaelic which are complemented by prepositions. **Ri** is frequently used with the verbs **can** 'say' and **bruidhinn** 'speak', e.g.: **can rium** 'say to me', **bhruidhinn Seumas ris** 'James spoke to him'. **Do** is frequently used with the irregular verb **thoir** 'give, bring', e.g.: **thoir dhomh** 'give (to) me'. Note that when using the following verbs and prepositions that the subject follows the verb directly and not the preposition, e.g.: **bhruidhinn Seumas (subject) ri Anna** 'James spoke to Ann'. Here are some more examples consisting mostly of regular verbs which are

complemented by prepositions. In each case the verbal root, i.e. the imperative 2nd singular form is given.

<b>can ri</b>	say to
<b>bruidhinn ri</b>	speak to
<b>tachair ri</b>	meet (with)
<b>innis do</b>	tell (to)
<b>thoir do</b>	give to
<b>iarr air</b>	ask
<b>faighnich de</b>	ask (information) of
<b>còrd ri</b>	enjoy (to accord with)

Such prepositions combine in the usual way with nouns and pronouns. Here are some sample sentences in the past tense:

<b>Thuirt Iain ri Domhnall.</b>	John said to Donald.
<b>Thug Anna pòg do Chalum.<sup>2</sup></b>	Ann gave a kiss to Calum.
<b>Bhruidhinn mi ri Seumas an-raoir.</b>	I spoke to James last night.
<b>Thachair Anna ri Mairi an-dé.</b>	Ann met (with) Mary yesterday.
<b>Dh'innis mi an naidheachd do Sheumas.</b>	I told the story to James.
<b>Dh'iarr mi air an tidsear.</b>	I asked the teacher.
<b>Chòrd an céilidh rium.</b>	I enjoyed the ceilidh.

## 51 More on the past tense: dependent

You will recall from Lesson 4 the distinction between independent and dependent verbal forms. The forms given above for the past tense are the independent forms which are used independently and in other instances to be discussed shortly. The dependent past forms are formed by prefixing **do** to the independent past form:

<b>Cha do dh'òl mi an ti.</b>	I did not drink the tea.
<b>An do bhrist Anna an uinneag.</b>	Did Ann break the window?
<b>Nach do cheannaich thu am pàipear?</b>	Did you not buy the paper?
<b>Cha do bhruidhinn Iain rithe.</b>	John did not speak to her.
<b>An do thachair thu ris an tidsear fhathast?</b>	Did you meet the teacher yet?
<b>Nach do dh'innis mi dhut mar-thà.</b>	Did I not tell you already?
<b>Cha do chòrd an oidhche riutha.</b>	They did not enjoy the night.

<sup>2</sup>Recall that **do** lenites a following noun. See Lesson 5 page 73.

## 51a 'Never', 'ever'

The Gaelic word for 'never', **riamh** is used with verbs in the past tense, e.g.:

<b>Cha do dh'òl mi lionn riamh.</b>	I never drank beer.
<b>Cha do shreap mi Beinn Nibheis riamh.</b>	I never climbed Ben Nevis.
<b>An do dh'ith thu bradan riamh?</b>	Did you ever eat salmon?
<b>Nach do thachair thu ri Iain riamh?</b>	Did you never meet John?
<b>Riamh</b> can mean 'ever, always', e.g.:	
<b>Bha sinn a' fuireach an Glaschu riamh</b>	We have always lived in Glasgow

## 51b 'Only'

The word for 'only' in Gaelic is **ach** which means literally 'but'. **Ach** is usually placed immediately before the subject or the object of the sentence. Consider the following examples:

<b>Cha dàinig ach Anna.</b> ( <i>subj</i> )	Only Ann came.
<b>Cha do dh'òl mi ach gloine fion.</b> ( <i>obj</i> )	I only drank a glass of wine.
<b>Chan eil mi ag iarraidh ach pios beag.</b> ( <i>obj</i> )	I only want a small piece.

## 52 Independent and dependent verbal particles

We have defined independent verbal forms as being forms which occur 'independently', i.e. at the beginning of sentences or phrases. Similarly we have defined dependent verbal forms as forms whose occurrence is 'dependent' upon the presence of particles like **cha** 'not', **an** 'is?', **nach** 'is ... not?' We refer to these particles as **dependent particles**. We will learn some other dependent verbal particles shortly. Independent verbal forms can also occur after certain verbal particles e.g.: **ciamar a** 'how' and **cuine a** 'when'; such particles are referred to as **independent particles**. Consider the following examples:

### INDEPENDENT VERBAL FORMS:

<b>Bha Iain ann.</b>	John was there.
<b>Ciamar a bha an céilidh?</b>	How was the ceilidh?

**Cuine a bha an céilidh ann?**

**Bhrist thu an iuchair.**

**Ciamar a bhrist thu an iuchair?**

**Cuine a bhrist thu an iuchair?**

When was the ceilidh?

You broke the key.

How did you break the key?

When did you break the key?

#### INDEPENDENT PARTICLES

**a** that, who, which  
(rel pron)

**dé a?** what?

**có a?** who?

**ciamar a?** how?

**cuine a?** when?

**ged a** although

**nuair a** when (the time that)

**ma** if

**na** what, that which

#### DEPENDENT PARTICLES

**cha** not  
*interr particle positive*

**nach** *interr particle negative, etc.*

**càite an?** where?

**far an** where (the place that)

**gun** that (conjunction)

#### Examples:

##### INDEPENDENT:

**An duine a chunnaic mi an-raoir.** The man that I saw last night.

**Có a bhrist an uinneag?** Who broke the window?

**Ciamar a chòrd an céilidh riut?** How did you enjoy the ceilidh?

**Cuine a thill thu dhachaigh?** When did you return home?

**Chan aithne dhomh e ged a thachair mi ris.** I don't know him although I met him.

**Dé a thuirt Anna?** What did Ann say?

**Ma cheannaich thu am páipear.** If you bought the paper.

**Seo na tha agam.** Here's what I have.

##### DEPENDENT:

**Càite an do dh'halbh iad.**

Where did they go?

**Cha do choisich sinn an oidhche ud.**

We did not walk that night.

**An do thachair thu ri Tormod riamh.**

Did you ever meet Norman?

**Nach do leugh thu an leabhar aig Iain?**

Did you not read John's book?

**Càite an do cheannaich thu na suiteis?**

Where did you buy the sweets?

**Tha an còta agad far an do dh'fhàg thu e.**

Your coat is where you left it.

## 52a How to recognise an independent verbal particle

All independent particles (with the exception of **ma** 'if' and **na** 'that which') end in the particle **a**, which as we will see in a later lesson is in fact the relative pronoun **a** 'that'. However, the **a** is frequently dropped in writing following the vowels in **có** 'who' and **dé** 'what' in order to reflect pronunciation, but is retained here for reasons of clarity.

#### USEFUL RULE

Verbal particles which end in **a** are independent particles and are therefore followed by independent verbal forms. All other verbal particles (except **ma** and **na**) are dependent and are followed by dependent verbal forms.

## 53 Understanding the difference between:

<b>có</b>	who?	~	<b>a</b>	who
<b>cuine a</b>	when?	~	<b>nuair a</b>	when
<b>càite an</b>	where?	~	<b>far an</b>	where
<b>dé a</b>	what?	~	<b>na</b>	what

The question mark following the words in the first column indicates that these forms are question (also called interrogative) forms. Note that they all begin with **c-** (compare English **wh-**). The forms without question marks are not question forms. **Có** 'who' is a relative pronoun for which sometimes 'that' is used. **Nuair a** means 'when' in the sense 'the time that'. **Far an** means 'where' in the sense 'the place that'. **Na** means 'what' in the sense 'that which' or 'all that'.

The question forms of 'who, when, where, what' are usually used with the idiom **tha fios aig** 'know', e.g.:

**Chan eil fios agam có a chuir an litir.**

I don't know who sent the letter.

**Am bheil fios agaibh cuine a thàinig an trèan?**

Do you know when the train came?

**Am bheil fios agad càite am bheil an stèisean?**

Do you know where the station is?

**Chan eil fios aig Anna dé a thachair.**

Ann doesn't know what happened.

Note: some dialects use **far an** 'where' and **na** 'what' in indirect questions like the above.

The difference between **ma** 'if' and **an** 'if, whether' is discussed in Lesson 10 Section 88.

### Vocabulary

dùin	/d̪u:ŋ/	close
doras (m)	/d̪ɔrəs/	door
iuchair (f)	/juxər̪j/	key
ceilidh (m)	/k̪e:li/	ceilidh
leabhar (m)	/l̪ɔ:b̪ar/	book
òg	/ɔ:g/	young
seinn (vb)	/ʃeip/	sing
sgith	/sg̪i:/	tired

### Exercise 3

#### Translate

- 1 Who closed the door?
- 2 When did they go out?
- 3 Where did you put the key?
- 4 I didn't tell him
- 5 Did you enjoy the ceilidh?
- 6 I read that book when I was young
- 7 Leave it where you found it
- 8 There's the man that sang at the ceilidh
- 9 I didn't see James if he was there
- 10 He came although he was tired

### 54 Time

**Dé an uair a tha e?** What time is it?  
**Tha e . . .** It is . . .

In telling the time, the word which corresponds to 'o'clock' in English is **uair**, which means 'hour' or 'time'. The singular form **uair** is used with **dà** 'two', but the plural **uairean** is used with the numerals from three to ten. Note that **aon** is not used to translate 'one (o'clock)' but is used in the translation of 'eleven (o'clock)'. The time in simple hours is therefore as follows:

uair	one o'clock
dà uair	two o'clock

trì uairean	three o'clock
ceithir uairean	four o'clock
cóig uairean	five o'clock
sia uairean	six o'clock
seachd uairean	seven o'clock
ochd uairean	eight o'clock
naoi uairean	nine o'clock
deich uairean	ten o'clock
aon uair deug	eleven o'clock
dà uair dheug	twelve o'clock

Note the lenition of **deug** in **dà uair dheug**; it is often pronounced as if it were **dà reug**. **Meadhan latha** is used for 'midday' and **meadhan oidhche** is used for 'midnight'. If we want to indicate time a.m., we usually add **anns a' mhadainn**, literally 'in the morning'. If we want to indicate p.m., we usually add **feasgar** which literally means 'evening'. However, there is some overlap between **feasgar** and **as t-oidhche** which literally means 'at night'. **Feasgar** is generally used up to about 6 o'clock and in some cases possibly up until 9 o'clock. **As t-oidhche** is generally used from about 9 o'clock onwards although when using **feasgar** there is some overlap, with 9 o'clock as a rough boundary.

### 54a Other times of the year

Study the following:

a' Bhliadhna Ùr	(the) New Year
Oidhche Challainn	Hogmanay, New Year's Eve
an Nollaig	Christmas
a' Chàisg	Easter
Latha Bealltainn	May Day
Oidhche Shamhna	Halloween
am bliadhna	this year
an-uiridh	last year
a-bhòin-uiridh	the year before last
an-dé	yesterday
an-raoir	last night
a-bhòin-dé	the day before yesterday
a-màireach	tomorrow

## 54b 'Last', 'next'

Study the following phrases:

a' bhliadhna seo a chaidh	last year
an t-seachdain seo a chaidh	last week
a' mhios seo a chaidh	last month

A' bhliadhna seo a chaidh literally means 'this year that has passed'. The a before chaidh is usually elided in speech.

an ath bhliadhna	next year
an ath sheachdain	next week
an ath mhios	next month
an ath-oidhch	tomorrow night

Ath\* 'next' is a leniting word and is usually preceded by the article.

Here are some other useful phrases involving ath\*:

an ath dhuine	the next person
an ath fhear (m)/t(h)é (f)	the next one (m, f)
an ath dhoras	(the) next door
an ath latha	(the) next day

'Next' can also be translated as follows:

a' bhliadhna seo a' tighinn	next year
an t-seachdain seo a' tighinn	next week
a' mhios seo a' tighinn	next month

A' bhliadhna seo a' tighinn literally means 'this year coming'. The a' before tighinn is usually elided in speech.

## 55 'Some'

The word for 'some' in Gaelic is eigin which is affixed to a small number of nouns, e.g.:

cuid-eigin	some person, someone
rud-eigin	something
uair-eigin	sometime
áit-eigin	somewhere
té-eigin	someone (f)
fear-eigin	someone (m)

The phrase air choireigin 'some . . . or other' can also be used with this group and is regularly used with other nouns, e.g.:

taigh air choireigin	some house or other
leabhar air choireigin	some book or other
rud air choireigin	some thing or other

## 55a 'Feadhain'

The indefinite pronoun feadhain can mean 'some people' or 'some things', e.g.:

Dh'fhalbh feadhain a Ghlaschu agus thill feadhain eile á Peart.  
Some people went away to Glasgow and others returned from  
Perth.

Tha dealbhannan aig Mairi agus tha feadhain aig Anna  
cuideachd.

Mary has photographs and Ann also has some.

## 56 'Every'

The word for 'every' in Gaelic is a h-uile which prefixes h- to vowels, e.g.:

a h-uile rud	every thing
a h-uile duine	every man, everyone
a h-uile h-àite	every place
a h-uile h-uair	every time

## Vocabulary

leugh (vb)	/ləχ:(v)/	read
pàipear-naidheachd (m)	/pe:hper̩ n̄eɪdχəx/	newspaper
an-diugh	/ən d̄uχ/	today
cothrom (m)	/kɔχrom/	chance
dad as ùr?	/d̄ad̩ as u:r/	anything new?
Telebhisean na Gàidhlig	/teləvɪʃən n̄ə ga:lig/	Gaelic Television
muilleanan	/muχenənə/	millions
gu sealladh sealbh ort	/gə səχχəd̩ s̄ealbh̩ ɔrt/	assermentation of surprise or disbelief: good lord!
teich (vb)	/t̄eχ/	escape, flee
priosanach (m), priosanaich (pl)	/pri:χənəχ/, /pri:χənəχ/	prisoners
gu ruige	/gə ρuχχə/	to
cùirt (f)	/ku:χs̄d̩/	court
taghadh-pàrlamaid (m)	/t̄v-əχ p̄a:χləməd̩/	parliamentary election
an Fhraing (f)	/əχ r̄ainχḡ/	France
tagh (vb)	/t̄χχ/	elect, select
ceann-suidhe (m)	/k̄auχ̄ suχ̄/	president

a h-uile duine	/ə hu:lə ðu:nə/	everyone
dùthaich (f)	/ðu:-iç/	country, district
bho chionn ghoirid	/ðo çu:n̩ yyr̩'eđi/	recently
mórán	/mo:ran/	much
meàirleach (m), meàirlích (pl)	/mja:s̩ləx/, /mja:s̩l̩iç/	thief, robber
an t-Òban (m)	/ən̩ tɔ:ban/	Oban
goid (vb)	/gvd̩/	steal, rob
miltean	/mi:l̩t̩ən/	thousands
cuid-eigin	/ku:d̩ig̩'in/	somebody
a' bhòin-dé	/ə vɔ:n̩ d̩e:/	the day before yesterday
poileas (m)	/poləs/	police
bruidhinn (vb)	/bru:iñ/	speak
manaidsear (m)	/manad̩'ſer/	manager
aithnich (vb)	/aŋiç/	recognise, know
sgeul (m)	/sg̩'lał/	sign, news

## COMHRADH

Am bheil dad as ùr?

- Anna* An do leugh thu am pàipear-naidheachd an-diugh?  
*Sìm* Cha do leugh. Cha d'fhuair mi cothrom fhathast. Am bheil dad as ùr ann?  
*Anna* Tha. Fhuair Telebhisean na Gàidhlig airgead mór: muilleanan.  
*Sìm* Gu sealladh sealbh ort!  
*Anna* Agus theich prìosanaich a bha a' dol gu ruige cùirt. Thachair sin an t-seachdain seo a chaidh.  
*Sìm* Agus nach robh taghadh-pàrlamaid anns an Fhraing?  
*Anna* Bha agus thagh iad ceann-suidhe ùr air a' phàrlamaid aca. Ach cha do chòrd sin ris a h-uile duine.  
*Sìm* Dé a thachair anns an dùthaich seo bho chionn ghoirid?  
*Anna* Cha do thachair móran. Brist meàirlích a-staigh dhan a' bhanca anns an Òban. Agus ghoid iad miltean.  
*Sìm* Dh'innis cuid-eigin sin dhomh a' bhòin-dé ceart gu leòr. Cha do rug am poileas orra fhathast, chuala mi.  
*Anna* Cha do rug. Bhruidhinn am poileas ris a' mhanaidsear ach ged a dh'aithnich esan na meàirlích, chan eil sgeul aca orra.

## TRANSLATION

Anything new?

- Ann* Have<sup>3</sup> you read the newspaper today?  
*Simon* No. I haven't had a chance yet. Is there anything new in it?  
*Ann* There is. Gaelic Television got a lot of money: millions.  
*Simon* Good lord!  
*Ann* And prisoners who were going to court escaped. That happened last week.  
*Simon* And wasn't there a parliamentary election in France?  
*Ann* Yes, and they elected a new president for their parliament. But that didn't please everyone.  
*Simon* What happened in this country recently?  
*Ann* Not much happened. Robbers broke into a bank in Oban. And they stole thousands.  
*Simon* Somebody told me that the day before yesterday right enough. The police didn't catch them yet, I heard.  
*Ann* No. The police spoke to the manager but although he recognised the thieves, they don't have a sign of them.

<sup>3</sup>Note that Scottish Gaelic uses the simple past tense here where English uses the perfect.

## Lesson 7

### 57 The genitive case

Gaelic, besides having a nominative and a prepositional case also has a genitive case, denoted here by (G). The genitive has various functions. It can be used (a) to express possession and (b) to give adjectival force to a noun.

- |                                 |                |
|---------------------------------|----------------|
| (a) <b>taigh Dhomhnaill (G)</b> | Donald's house |
| (b) <b>sgian-arain (G)</b>      | bread-knife    |

#### (a) Possession

There are two ways of expressing that something belongs to someone, only one of which involves the genitive case:

- |                      |          |                        |
|----------------------|----------|------------------------|
| <b>(i) POSSESSEE</b> | <b>+</b> | <b>POSSESSOR (GEN)</b> |
| <b>taigh</b>         |          | <b>Dhomhnaill</b>      |
| Donald's house       |          |                        |

Here are some other examples:

- |                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>leabhar Sheumais (G)</b> | James' book         |
| <b>cat Móraig (G)</b>       | Morag's cat         |
| <b>mac ministeir (G)</b>    | a son of a minister |
| <b>ad caileige (G)</b>      | a girl's hat        |

It will be clear from the above that the genitive of masculine proper names is formed by leniting the initial consonant of the noun and by slenderising the final consonant. The genitive of feminine proper names is formed by slenderising the final consonant of the noun. This applies only when there are initial consonants to lenite and/or when there are non-slender final consonants to slenderise. Consider the following examples whose genitive and nominative forms are identical:

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| <b>leabhar Iain</b> | John's book     |
| <b>cat Alasdair</b> | Alasdair's cat  |
| <b>cù Anna</b>      | Ann's dog       |
| <b>càr Catriona</b> | Catherine's car |

The alternative possessive construction is formed as follows:

- |                 |          |                  |          |            |          |                  |
|-----------------|----------|------------------|----------|------------|----------|------------------|
| <b>(ii) ART</b> | <b>+</b> | <b>POSSESSEE</b> | <b>+</b> | <b>AIG</b> | <b>+</b> | <b>POSSESSOR</b> |
| <b>an</b>       |          | <b>taigh</b>     |          | <b>aig</b> |          | <b>Domhnall</b>  |
| Donald's house  |          |                  |          |            |          |                  |

This construction should be familiar to you. It is essentially the 'alternative possessive construction' which we learnt in Lesson 2. Here are some further examples:

- |                              |                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>an leabhar aig Seumas</b> | James' book     |
| <b>an cat aig Mórag</b>      | Morag's cat     |
| <b>an leabhar aig Iain</b>   | John's book     |
| <b>an cat aig Aonghas</b>    | Angus' cat      |
| <b>an cù aig Anna</b>        | Ann's dog       |
| <b>an càr aig Catriona</b>   | Catherine's car |

#### (b) Adjectival force

The genitive is also used to give adjectival force to a noun. In other words, if a noun is used adjectively, it appears in the genitive case. Let us compare the following two noun phrases:

- |                        |               |
|------------------------|---------------|
| <b>sgian bheag</b>     | a small knife |
| <b>sgian-arain (G)</b> | a bread-knife |

It is clear that both *bheag* and *arain* are adjectives: they both tell us more about *sgian* 'knife' and as adjectives they naturally both follow the noun they qualify. However, *bheag* is an adjective proper and *ara(i)n* is a noun. When *aran* 'bread' is used adjectively it appears in the genitive case. The genitive of *aran* is *arain*.

Hyphens are sometimes used in such compounds. Here are some further examples with the genitive noun underlined:

- |                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| <b>leabhar-sgoile</b>   | a school book  |
| <b>solas-sráide</b>     | a street light |
| <b>seòmar-leughaidh</b> | a reading-room |

Even when the genitive indicates possession, the genitive noun also acts as an adjective. Consider the following examples, the genitive noun being underlined in each case:

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>mac ministeir</b> | a minister's son |
| <b>còta balaich</b>  | a boy's coat     |
| <b>ad caileige</b>   | a girl's hat     |

## 57a Forming the genitive case

Leaving aside irregular nouns, there are five types of genitive formation, the most important of which are numbers 1 and 2 below.

### Type Formation

1	+ slenderisation	applies to masculine nouns only
2	+ slenderisation + e	applies to feminine nouns only
3	+ a	applies to masculine and feminine nouns
4	+ ach	applies to feminine nouns (usually ending in -ir)
5	no change	applies to masculine and feminine nouns

+ slenderisation means that the genitive is formed by slenderising the nominative singular form, etc. The process of slenderisation may affect the preceding vowel (as was pointed out in the introduction; see also Appendix 1) e.g.: *cas* > *coise*; *bòrd* > *bùird*; *mac* > *mic*; *caileag* > *caileige*; *cailleach* > *cailliche*; *ceòl* > *ciùil* etc. Watch out for examples below.

Here are some examples:

### TYPE 1: + SLENDERISATION

#### Masculine nouns only

Nominative	Genitive	Example	
cat	cait	biadh cait	cat or cat's food
ministear	ministeir	taigh ministeir	a minister's house
balach	balaich	ad balaich	a boy's hat
bòrd	bùird	cas bùird	leg of a table
ceòl	ciùil	fear ciùil	a music man, musician

### TYPE 2: + SLENDERISATION + E

#### Feminine nouns only

Nominative	Genitive	Example	
cluas	cluaise	fainne cluaise	an earring
caileag	caileige	còta caileige	a girl's coat
cas	coise	ball-coise	football
sgoil	sgoile	maighistear sgoile	school teacher

### TYPE 3: + A

#### Masculine and feminine nouns

Nominative	Genitive	Example	
pìob (f) pipe	pìoba	ceòl pìoba	pipe music
loch (m) lake	locha	uisge locha	lake water

fiodh (m) wood	fiodha	each fiodha	a wooden horse
fuil (f) blood	fala	dòrtadh fala	bloodshed
muir (f) sea	mara	iastg mara	sea-fish

### TYPE 4: (+ SYNCOPED) + (E)ACH

#### Feminine nouns only

Note that the final syllable is lost (called syncope) when (e)ach is added.

Nominative	Genitive	Examples	
obair work	obrach	latha obrach	a work day
litir letter	litreach	bogsa-litreach	a letter-box

### TYPE 5: NO CHANGE

#### Masculine and feminine nouns

Nominative	Genitive	Examples	
baile (m) town	baile	meadhan baile	middle of a town
duine (m) man	duine	ad duine	a man's hat
bus (m) bus	bus	draibhear bus	a bus driver
bainne (m) milk	bainne	gloine bainne	a glass of milk
tì (f) tea	tì	cupa tì	a cup of tea
colaiste (f) college	colaiste	cùrsa colaiste	a college course

Types 1 and 2 are by far the most commonly used. Type 5 is used for all nouns with final vowels or final -chd and also for the majority of recent loan-words from English. The final -e in type 2 is sometimes dropped with disyllabic words, thus bringing the genitive formation of such nouns into line with type 1, e.g.:

ad caileige OR ad caileig a girl's hat  
còta cailliche OR còta caillich an old woman's coat

Note: all subsequent nouns in this lesson will have a number attached to indicate which genitive formation they have.

## 57b The article in the genitive case

The article changes form in the genitive. We must distinguish between masculine and feminine forms. The masculine forms are **an\*** which we have met before (see nominative feminine singular and prepositional singular forms of the article, Lessons 2 and 6). The feminine forms are **na** which are discussed below.

**MASCULINE: *an\****

- a' + lenition** before all lenitable consonants (except d t s f), i.e. b c g m p  
**an t-** before 's' sl sr sn, NOT sg sp st  
**an + lenition** before 'f'  
**an** otherwise, i.e. before d n t l r and all vowels

**FEMININE: *na***

- na h-** before all vowels  
**na** otherwise

**58 Double definite article**

We have seen that when two nouns come together where the second noun is adjectival with respect to the first (e.g.: *leabhar Sheumais* 'James' book', *sgian-arain* 'a bread-knife'), the second noun appears in the genitive case. When the second noun is a definite noun (i.e. a proper noun or a noun preceded by the article or a possessive pronoun, see Section 20) the first noun i.e. the possessee may NOT be preceded by the definite article.

**Am mac** 'the son' and **am ministear** 'the minister' combine to give **mac a' mhinistéir** (with only one article) which means 'the son of the minister' or 'the minister's son'. The definiteness of such noun phrases is marked by the definiteness of the second noun only. Here are some more examples:

**MASCULINE**

- fear an taighe** the man of the house, compère  
**fear a' bhainne** the man of the milk, the milkman  
**ceann a' chait** the head of the cat, the cat's head  
**meadhan a' bhaile** the centre of the town  
**leabhar a' ghille** the book of the boy, the boy's book

**FEMININE**

- gloine na h-uinneige** the glass of the window  
**mac na caileige** the son of the girl, the girl's son  
**solas na gréine** the light of the sun, the sunlight  
**duilleagan na craobhie** the leaves of the tree

**DDA RULE**

The DDA rule (the Double Definite Article rule) states that if the possessor is a definite noun the preceding noun (the possessee) will not be preceded by the article.

In a string of nouns connected in a genitival relation only the last noun (the possessor) appears in the genitive, e.g.:

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <b>bràthair a' bhalaich</b> (gen)       | the boy's brother               |
| <b>taigh bràthair a' bhalaich</b> (gen) | the boy's brother's house       |
| <b>doras taigh bràthair</b>             | the door of the boy's brother's |
| <b>a' bhalaich</b> (gen)                | house                           |

**Irregular nouns**

<i>Nominative</i>		<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Examples</i>
athair (m)	father	athar	càr an athar
màthair (f)	mother	màthar	athair mo mhàthar
bràthair (m)	brother	bràthar	taigh do bhràthar
piuthar (f)	sister	peathar	caraid mo pheathar
mac (m)	son	mic	bean do mhic
taigh (m)	house	taighe	doras an taighe
bean (f)	wife	mnà	còta na mnà
cù (m)	dog	coin	biadh a' choin
bò (f)	cow	bà	bainne na bà
leabaidh (f)	bed	leapa	aodach leapa
cedì (m)	music	ciùil	fear ciùil
biadh (m)	food	bidhe	taigh bidhe

**Vocabulary**

<b>mac (m, irreg)</b>	/maxg/	son
<b>sagart (m, 1)</b>	/sagərd/	priest
<b>dath (m, 3)</b>	/ða/	colour
<b>sneachd (m, 5)</b>	/ʃnejx/	snow
<b>cnoc (m, 1)</b>	/krɔxg/	hill
<b>doras (m, 1)</b>	/ðɔrəs/	door
<b>sgoil (f, 2)</b>	/sgɔl/	school
<b>biadh (m, irreg)</b>	/biɔy/	food
<b>leabhar (m, 1)</b>	/lɔ-ər/	book

### Exercise 1

#### Translate

- 1 the son of the priest
- 2 the colour of the snow
- 3 the top of the hill
- 4 the door of the school
- 5 my brother's sister
- 6 the key of the house
- 7 my sister's car
- 8 the cat's food
- 9 James' father
- 10 Catherine's book

### 59 Surnames

In surnames the element following Mac is usually a noun in the genitive, e.g.:

<b>MacDhomhnaill</b>	MacDonald	(lit 'the son of Donald')
<b>MacAonghais</b>	MacInnes	(lit 'the son of Angus')
<b>Mac a' Ghobhainn</b>	Smith	(lit 'the son of the smith')
<b>Mac an t-Saoir</b>	Macintyre	(lit 'the son of the carpenter')

Nic rather than Mac is used for females, e.g.:

<b>NicDhomhnaill</b>	MacDonald
<b>NicAonghais</b>	MacInnes
<b>Nic a' Ghobhainn</b>	Smith
<b>Nic an t-Saoir</b>	Macintyre

### 60 Adverbs of quantity

On occasions you will need to talk about quantities; you may have too much, too little, a lot or not enough of something, etc.

Study the following:

<b>móran</b>	much, many
<b>beagan</b>	little, small amount
<b>tòrr</b>	a lot
<b>cus</b>	too much, too many (very many)
<b>gu leòr/pailteas</b>	enough, plenty

These words can be used on their own as nouns, e.g.:

<b>Chan eil móran an-seo.</b>	There is not much here.
<b>Tha beagan agam.</b>	I have a little.
<b>Tha tòrr an-sin.</b>	There is a lot there.
<b>Dh'òl Domhnall cus an-raoir.</b>	Donald drank too much last night.
<b>Am bheil gu leor agad?</b>	Do you have enough?

These words can also be used with a following noun in which case the following noun appears in the genitive:

<b>móran airgid (G)</b>	much money
<b>beagan salainn (G)</b>	a little salt
<b>tòrr siùcair (G)</b>	a lot of sugar
<b>cus feòla (G)</b>	too much meat
<b>gu leòr/pailteas càise (G)</b>	enough/plenty of cheese

However, móran and beagan may also be used with the preposition de 'of':

<b>móran de dh'airgead</b>	much money
<b>beagan de shalann</b>	a little salt

### 61 The verbal noun and the genitive case

In Lesson 3, we discussed the periphrastic construction involving the verb tha and verbal nouns. The direct object of this periphrastic construction normally appears in the genitive when the object is a definite noun (see Section 20), e.g.:

<b>Tha mi a' leughadh an leabhair (G).</b>	I am reading the book.
<b>Tha e a' seinn an òrain (G).</b>	He is singing the song.
<b>Tha i ag ithe na feòla (G).</b>	She is eating the meat.

The use of the genitive is easily understood when we consider a literal translation of the above examples:

I am at the reading of the book.  
He is at the singing of the song.  
She is at the eating of the meat.

If, however, the verbal noun in question is complemented by a preposition, the (indirect) object of such verbs does not appear in the genitive since it follows a preposition. Here are some examples:

<b>Bha mi a' bruidhinn ri Seumas.</b>	I was talking to James.
<b>Thug Calum pòg dhan a' chaileig (P).</b>	Calum gave a kiss to the girl.
<b>Dh'innis mi an naidheachd</b>	I told the story to the old
<b>dhan a' chailllich (P).</b>	woman.
<b>Chòrd an céilidh ri Domhnall.</b>	Donald enjoyed the ceilidh.

**Vocabulary**

tí (f, 5)	/t̪i:/	tea
fosgladh (vn)	/fɔsgləy/	opening
dúnadh (vn)	/d̪u:nəy/	closing
doras (m, 1)	/d̪ɔrəs/	door
uinneag (f, 2)	/u:nag/	window

**Exercise 2****Translate**

- 1 We are leaving today.
- 2 Are they coming?
- 3 Who is singing?
- 4 They are not listening.
- 5 We were eating and drinking.
- 6 Were you working today?
- 7 She is drinking the tea.
- 8 They are buying the book.
- 9 I am opening the door.
- 10 She is closing the window.

**62 Composite prepositions**

The prepositions which we have met so far have been simple prepositions consisting of monosyllabic words. These prepositions are followed by the prepositional form (of the article and of feminine nouns) in Scottish Gaelic. There are, however, other prepositions which we may call **composite prepositions** which consist of two words, one of which is a simple preposition. There are two types, the distinction between them depending upon the position of the simple preposition; the simple preposition may be (A) the second element or (B) the first element.

**Type A: word + preposition = new composite preposition**

coltach ri	like
comhlá ri	along with
timcheall air	around
tarsainn air	across, over
seachad air	past
faisg air	near, close to

The prepositional form of the article and of feminine nouns are used following these composite prepositions since their final element is a simple preposition:

coltach ri seann chù	like an old dog
comhlá ri mo phiuthair (P) <sup>1</sup>	(along) with my sister
timcheall air a' chladach	around the shore
tarsainn air a' bhalla	over the wall
seachad air a' chaillich (P)	past the old woman
faisg air a' chathair	near the city

**Type B: preposition + noun = new composite preposition**

air cùl	behind
air beulaibh	in front
(air) feadh	throughout
an agaidh	against
an deidh	after
mu dheidhinn	about, concerning
os cionn	over, above
ri taobh	beside
a dh'ionnsaigh	to, towards
as aonais	without, in the absence of
airson (< air + son)	for (the sake of)

A noun following these composite prepositions appears in the genitive. This is illustrated by the following example:

ri taobh a' chait (G)<sup>2</sup> beside the cat

Ri taobh means literally 'by side'. When a noun, e.g. *an cat* 'the cat' follows, this becomes 'by the side of the cat', hence the need for the genitive. Most of the above composite (type B) prepositions can be translated by using two words in English which would use 'of' before a following noun, e.g.: *air cùl* 'on back (of)', *air beulaibh* 'in front (of)', *an agaidh* 'in face (of)', etc. Traditionally *air + son* is written as one word, *airson*.

Some examples:

airson do mhàthar (G)	for your mother
air cùl an taighe (G)	behind the house
air feadh na h-Alba (G)	throughout Scotland
an agaidh na gaoithe (G)	against the wind

<sup>1</sup>P denotes prepositional form of the noun.

<sup>2</sup>G denotes the genitive form of the noun.

<b>an deidh a' gheama (G)</b>	after the game
<b>mu dheidhinn a' ghaoil (G)</b>	about love
<b>os cionn an dorais (G)</b>	above the door
<b>ri taobh a' bhalaich (G)</b>	beside the boy
<b>a dh'ionnsaigh a' bhaile (G)</b>	towards the town
<b>as aonais mo pheathar (G)</b>	without my sister

## 62a Prepositions which are followed by the genitive

There is a small number of simple prepositions which are followed by the genitive:

<b>chun</b>	to
<b>far</b>	off
<b>ré</b>	during
<b>tarsainn</b>	across
<b>chun a' bhaile (G)</b>	to the town
<b>far a' bhùird (G)</b>	off the table
<b>ré na h-oidhche (G)</b>	during the night
<b>tarsainn na páirce (G)</b>	across the park

Do not confuse **far** 'off' which is a preposition and therefore only used before nouns, with **far an** 'where' which is a verbal particle and is therefore only used before verbs.

## Composite prepositions with pronouns

### Type A

Pronoun objects of type A composite pronouns combine in the usual way with the final preposition:

<b>coltach riùm</b>	like me
<b>comhla riut</b>	along with you
<b>timcheall oirnn</b>	around us
<b>tarsainn orra</b>	across them
<b>seachad oirbh</b>	past you

### Type B

Pronoun objects of type B composite prepositions do not follow the preposition as expected. Instead the pronoun appears as a possessive pronoun and precedes the noun part of the composite

preposition. 'Behind me' is not **air cùl mi** but **air mo chùlaibh**, literally 'on my back'. Here are other examples:

<b>AIR CÙL</b>		<b>AIR BEULAIBH</b>	
<b>air mo chùlaibh</b>	behind me	<b>air mo bheulaibh</b>	in front of me
<b>air do chùlaibh</b>	behind you	<b>air do bheulaibh</b>	in front of you
<b>air a chùlaibh</b>	behind him	<b>air a bheulaibh</b>	in front of him
<b>air e cùlaibh</b>	behind her	<b>air e beulaibh</b>	in front of her
<b>air ar cùlaibh</b>	behind us	<b>air ar beulaibh</b>	in front of us
<b>air ur cùlaibh</b>	behind you	<b>air ur beulaibh</b>	in front of you
<b>air an cùlaibh</b>	behind them	<b>air am beulaibh</b>	in front of them
<b>AN AGHAIDH</b>		<b>AN DEIDH</b>	
<b>nam aghaidh</b>	against me	<b>nam dheidh</b>	after me
<b>nad aghaidh</b>	against you	<b>nad dheidh</b>	after you
<b>na aghaidh</b>	against him	<b>na dheidh</b>	after him
<b>na h-aghaidh</b>	against her	<b>na deidh</b>	after her
<b>nar n-aghaidh</b>	against us	<b>nar deidh</b>	after us
<b>nur n-aghaidh</b>	against you	<b>nur deidh</b>	after you
<b>nan aghaidh</b>	against them	<b>nan deidh</b>	after them
<b>MU DHEIDHINN</b>		<b>RI TAOBH</b>	
<b>mu mo dheidhinn</b>	about me	<b>ri mo thaobh</b>	beside me
<b>mu do dheidhinn</b>	about you	<b>ri do thaobh</b>	beside you
<b>mu a dheidhinn</b>	about him	<b>ri a thaobh</b>	beside him
<b>mu ar deidhinn</b>	about her	<b>ri ar taobh</b>	beside her
<b>mu ur deidhinn</b>	about us	<b>ri ur taobh</b>	beside us
<b>mu an deidhinn</b>	about you	<b>ri an taobh</b>	beside you
	about them		beside them
<b>AIRSON</b>		<b>OS CIONN</b>	
<b>air mo shon</b>	for me	<b>os mo chionn</b>	over me
<b>air do shon</b>	for you	<b>os do chionn</b>	over you
<b>air a shon</b>	for him	<b>os a chionn</b>	over him
<b>air a son</b>	for her	<b>os a cionn</b>	over her
<b>air ar son</b>	for us	<b>os ar cionn</b>	over us
<b>air ur son</b>	for you	<b>os ur cionn</b>	over you
<b>air an son</b>	for them	<b>os an cionn</b>	over them
<b>A DH'IONNSAIGH</b>		<b>AS AONASÍ</b>	
<b>gam ionnsaigh</b>	towards me	<b>as m'aonais</b>	without me
<b>gad ionnsaigh</b>	towards you	<b>as d'aonais</b>	without you
<b>ga ionnsaigh</b>	towards him	<b>as a aonais</b>	without him
<b>ga h-ionnsaigh</b>	towards her	<b>as a h-aonais</b>	without her
<b>gar n-ionnsaigh</b>	towards us	<b>as ar n-aonais</b>	without us
<b>gur n-ionnsaigh</b>	towards you	<b>as ur n-aonais</b>	without you
<b>gan ionnsaigh</b>	towards them	<b>as an aonais</b>	without them

**Vocabulary**

doras (*m*) /dɔrəs/ door

**Exercise 3****Translate**

- 1 behind me
- 2 in front of you
- 3 above him
- 4 beside her
- 5 without us
- 6 like them
- 7 along with me
- 8 around us
- 9 past it (*m*)
- 10 to the door

**63 More on time**

We have already learnt how to tell the time in simple hours. We will now learn how to tell other times. The word for 'after/past' is **an deidh** and the word for 'to' is **gu**. The counting form of the numerals follows both **gu** and **an deidh** i.e. a precedes the numerals from two to ten e.g.: a dhà, a trì, ..., a h-ochd etc. However, the a is generally elided in speech and usually in writing following **gu**; it will be retained here for reasons of clarity. The word for 'quarter' is **cairteal** (**ceathramh** in some dialects) and the word for 'half' is **lethuair**.

<b>cairteal an deidh a deich</b>	quarter past ten
<b>cairteal gu a sia</b>	quarter to six
<b>lethuair an deidh a h-ochd</b>	half past eight
<b>cairteal gu a h-ochd</b>	quarter to eight
<b>cairteal gu aon uair deug</b>	quarter to eleven
<b>lethuair an deidh dà uair dheug</b>	half past twelve

You will note that **uair**, **uairean** are usually omitted in the above examples, except in the case of **aon uair deug**, 'eleven o'clock', and **dà uair dheug**, 'twelve o'clock'.

When using minutes the appropriate form of the word **mionaid** 'minute' is used, i.e. singular after **dà** and plural, **mionaidean**, after numerals from three to ten. The singular form of **mionaid** is always used with **fichead** 'twenty'.

**Vocabulary**

dà mhionaid an deidh a h-ochd  
trì mionaidean gu a deich  
còig mionaidean gu meadhan latha  
deich mionaidean an deidh a trì  
fichead mionaid gu a ceithir  
còig mionaidean fichead gu a seachd

Note that **mionaidean** is generally not omitted in Scottish Gaelic as 'minute(s)' is in English.

**Vocabulary**

<b>lathaichean saora</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/la-içən sw:rə/	holidays
<b>taobh</b> ( <i>f</i> )	/tɔ:w:v/	side, part
<b>riamh</b>	/r'iav/	ever
<b>roimhe</b>	/rɔ:jə/, /rē:jə/	before
<b>an-uiridh</b>	/ə ʃur'i/, /ə ʃuri/	last year
<b>Beinn na h-Iolaire</b>	/bein̄ nə çu:jər'ə/	the Mountain of the Eagle
<b>sreap</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/strehp/	climb
<b>shreap</b>	/hrehp/	climbed
<b>Cnoc a' Chapaill</b>	/krɔ:xk ə xahpə:y/	the Hill of the Horse
<b>còrd ri</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/kɔ:sq ɾi:/	enjoy, be pleasing to
<b>gu sonraichte</b>	/gə sɔ:riçd̪ə/	especially
<b>coltas</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/kɔltəs/, /kɔjəs/	appearance
<b>uabhasach</b>	/üāvasəx/	terribly (intensifier), very much
<b>àite</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/a:ht̪iə/	place
<b>iasgach</b> ( <i>vn</i> )	/iəsgəx/	fishing
<b>gu tric</b>	/gə tricg̪/	often
<b>Loch na Creige</b>	/lɔx nə kr'eg̪iə/	the Loch of the Crag
<b>Linne na Ciste</b>	/linə nə k'iʃt̪ə/	the Pool of the Chest
<b>abhainn</b> ( <i>f</i> )	/ã-in̄/, /äv̄ip/, /än-in̄/	river
<b>Càrn Sheumais</b>	/ka:rn̄ he:mij/	the Cairn of James
<b>le chéile</b>	/le çe:lə/	both, together
<b>an Sidhein</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/ən̄ si:-ən/	the Fairy Mound
<b>muir</b> ( <i>f</i> ), <b>mara</b> (G)	/mur̄i/, /marə/	sea
<b>rathad</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/ra-əd̪/	road
<b>tachair ri</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/taxər̄ ɾi:/	meet with
<b>geamair</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/g̪emer̄/	gamekeeper
<b>dùthaich</b> ( <i>f</i> ), <b>dùthcha</b> (G)	/du: -iç/, /du:xa:/	country, district
<b>eachdraidh</b> ( <i>f</i> )	/ex̄ri:/	history

## COMHRADH

**Lathaichean saora faisg air Beinn na h-Iolaire<sup>3</sup>**

- Domhnall* Tha mac mo pheathar agus bràthair m'athar a' tighinn gar n-ionnsaigh air an lathaichean saora.
- Iain* An robh iad an taobh seo riamh roimhe?
- Domhnall* O bha gu dearbh. Bha iad an-seo an-uiridh comhla ruinn.
- Iain* Agus dé a rinn sibh?
- Domhnall* Sheall sinn Beinn na h-Iolaire dhaibh agus shreap sinn Cnoc a' Chapaill.
- Iain* An do chòrd sin riutha?
- Domhnall* Chòrd, agus gu sonraichte chòrd coltas an àite riutha uabhasach math.
- Iain* An robh sibh ag iasgach comhla riutha?
- Domhnall* Bha gu tric air Loch na Creige agus aig Linne na Ciste.
- Iain* An deach sibh tarsainn air an abhainn no seachad air Càrn Sheumais?
- Domhnall* Chaidh, le chéile, agus timcheall air an t-Sidhein agus ri taobh na mara ar an rathad dhachaigh.
- Iain* An do thachair geomair na dùthcha ruibh?
- Domhnall* Thachair agus dh'innis e eachdraidh an àite dhaibh. Bha e uabhasach coibhneil.

## CONVERSATION

**Holidays near Beinn na h-Iolaire**

- Donald* My nephew (sister's son) and my uncle (father's brother) are coming (to visit us) on their holidays.
- John* Were they ever in these parts before?
- Donald* Oh yes indeed. They were here last year with us.
- John* And what did you do?
- Donald* We showed them Beinn na h-Iolaire and we climbed Cnoc a' Chapaill.
- John* Did they enjoy that?
- Donald* They did, and especially they enjoyed the appearance of the place very much.
- John* Were you fishing along with them?
- Donald* Yes, often on Loch na Creige and at Linne na Ciste.
- John* Did you go across the river or past Càrn Sheumais?

<sup>3</sup>A not uncommon place name throughout the Highlands and Islands.

- Donald* Yes we did, both of them, and round the Sidhein and beside the sea on the way home.
- John* Did the gamekeeper of the district meet you?
- Donald* Yes, he did and he told them the history of the place. He was terribly kind.

# Lesson 8

## 64 'Tha': future

You will recall that Gaelic differentiates between independent and dependent verbal forms. Independent forms are used (i) independently and (ii) following independent verbal particles. Dependent forms are used following dependent verbal particles. In the future tense (of regular verbs) there are two independent verbal forms, the first of which is used independently and the second, following independent verbal particles. Here are the future forms of *tha*:

INDEPENDENT (i)	INDEPENDENT (ii) = Relative	DEPENDENT
<i>bidh</i>	<i>bhios</i>	<i>bi</i>
<i>bidh mi</i>	<i>bhios mi</i>	<i>bi mi</i> I will be
<i>bidh tu</i>	<i>bhios tu</i>	<i>bi thu</i> you will be
<i>bidh e, i</i>	<i>bhios e, i</i>	<i>bi e, i</i> he, she will be
<i>bidh sinn</i>	<i>bhios sinn</i>	<i>bi sinn</i> we will be
<i>bidh sibh</i>	<i>bhios sibh</i>	<i>bi sibh</i> you will be
<i>bidh iad</i>	<i>bhios iad</i>	<i>bi iad</i> they will be

Note also that *tu* is used with the independent forms and *thu* is used with the dependent form.

The future forms of *tha* may also be used to denote habitual actions, particularly when adverbs implying habit are present, e.g.:

*Bidh mi ann an Glaschu a h-uile latha.* I am in Glasgow every day.  
*Bidh mi a' snàmh a h-uile madainn.* I swim every morning.

## 64a Regular verbs: future

The periphrastic construction involving *tha* and the verbal noun, when used in the future usually refers only to the continuous future, e.g.: *bidh mi ag òl* 'I will be drinking'. The simple future consists of short verbal forms derived from the verbal root. We must distinguish once again between independent and dependent forms in the future tense. Moreover, we must distinguish between

two independent forms in this case. You will recall that independent forms occur:

- (i) in utterance initial position and
- (ii) following independent particles.

The future uses separate verbal forms for each. We will refer to the first independent form as the independent form of the future and to the second independent form as the relative form of the future.

The independent form is made by adding -(a)idh to the verbal root e.g.: *cuiridh* 'will put'. The relative form is made by adding -(e)as to the verbal root and leniting the verbal root, e.g.: *chuireas*; if the verbal root begins with a vowel or f + vowel, dh' is prefixed to the verbal root, e.g. *dh'òlas*, *dh'fhalbas*.

The endings -aidh and -as are used following verbal roots with final broad endings in accordance with the fundamental spelling rule of Gaelic: **Leathann ri Leathann is Caol ri Caol** 'Broad with broad and slender with slender'. Similarly, -idh and -eas are used following verbal roots with final slender endings.

The dependent form of the future is the verbal root itself. Here are some examples:

Imperative/ Verbal Root	Independent (i) = Relative	Independent (ii)	Dependent
<i>cuir</i> put	<i>cuiridh</i>	<i>chuireas</i>	<i>cuir</i>
<i>gabh</i> eat, etc.	<i>gabhadh</i>	<i>ghabhas</i>	<i>gabh</i>
<i>brist</i> break	<i>bristidh</i>	<i>bhristeas</i>	<i>brist</i>
<i>ceannaich</i> buy	<i>ceannaichidh</i>	<i>cheannaicheas</i>	<i>ceannaich</i>
<i>leugh</i> read	<i>leughaidh</i>	<i>leughas</i>	<i>leugh</i>
<i>òl</i> drink	<i>òlaidh</i>	<i>dh'òlas</i>	<i>òl</i>
<i>falbh</i> go away	<i>falbhaidh</i>	<i>dh'fhalbas</i>	<i>falbh</i>

Examples:

- Cuiridh mi a-mach an cat. (Independent)  
 I will put the cat out.
- Có chuireas a-mach an cat? (Relative)  
 Who will put the cat out?
- Cha chuir Seumas a-amach e. (Dependent)  
 James won't put him out.
- Gabhadh mi buntàta is im. (Independent)  
 I will eat potatoes and butter.
- Dé ghabhas Anna? (Relative)  
 What will Ann eat?

<b>Nach gabh i an aon rud?</b>	(Dependent) Will she not have the same (thing)?
<b>Ólaidh mi uisge beatha.</b>	(Independent) I will drink whisky.
<b>Nuar a dh'òlas mi lionn.</b>	(Relative) When I drink ale.
<b>An òl thu balgam beag?</b>	(Dependent) Will you drink a little drop?

## 64b Pronouns

The personal pronouns **mi**, **t(h)u**, **e**, **i**, **sinn**, **sibh**, **iad** are used with all future forms. However, **tu** is used with the independent forms -(a)idh and -(e)as and **thu** is used with the dependent forms, e.g.:

<b>Bristidh tu a' ghloine.</b>	You will break the glass.
<b>Dé sheinneas tu?</b>	What will you sing?

**An ceannaich thu am pàipear?** Will you buy the paper?

Note that **cha** normally lenites a following consonant (except **d**, **t** and **s**) and becomes **chan** before vowels and **f + vowels**, e.g.:

<b>Cha chuir mi a-mach an cù.</b>	I will not put the dog out.
<b>Cha ghabh e sion.</b>	He will not eat anything.
<b>Chan òl mi uisge beatha.</b>	I will not drink whisky.
<b>Chan fhalbh iad gu bràch.</b>	They will never leave.

### \*\*\* IMPORTANT \*\*\*

Verbs with two syllables usually ending in **-r**, **-l**, **-n**, **-ng** lose their second syllable when the future endings are added. Here is a list of the most important examples, illustrated with the endings **idh**, as:

<b>tachair</b>	<b>tachraidh</b> , <b>thachras</b>	will happen
<b>fosgail</b>	<b>fosglaidh</b> , <b>dh'fhosglas</b>	will open
<b>bruidhinn</b>	<b>bruidhnidh</b> , <b>bhruidhneas</b>	will speak
<b>tarraing</b>	<b>tàirrnidh</b> , <b>thàirrneas</b>	will pull

Note also:

<b>innis</b>	<b>innsidh</b> , <b>dh'innseas</b>	will tell
--------------	------------------------------------	-----------

Note: final **-nn** and **-ng** are reduced to **-n** when an ending is added

In English in sentences where the main clause is in the future tense, subordinate clauses introduced by 'when' and 'if' usually appear in the present tense. In Gaelic the future tense is retained throughout in both clauses, e.g.:

**Leughaidh mi an leabhar nuair a bhios an ùine agam.**

I will read the book when I have the time.

**Ólaidh mise té ma ghabhas tu fhéin té.**

I will drink one (a drink) if you take one.

## 64c Present habitual use of future tense

The future tense forms may, as in English, be used to denote present habitual actions, particularly when adverbs implying habit are present, e.g.:

**Ceannaichidh Iain am pàipear a h-uile latha.** John buys the paper every day.

**Falbhaidh iad gach seachdain.** They go away every week.

**Bidh mi an Glaschu gu math tric.** I am in Glasgow fairly frequently.

## 65 Ability

The future tense can imply 'ability', e.g.:

<b>seinnidh Anna</b>	Ann can sing
<b>cluichidh Iain camanachd</b>	John can play shinty

### Vocabulary

<b>ionnsaich</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/jū:nσic/	learn
<b>seinn</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/seɪn/	sing
<b>òran</b> ( <i>m, 1</i> )	/ɔ:ran/	song
<b>aran</b> ( <i>m, 1</i> )	/aran/	bread
<b>geal</b>	/g̊a:l/	white
<b>gu moch</b>	/gə mox/	early
<b>uair sam bith</b>	/uər̥ səm bi:/	any time
<b>anns a' mhadainn</b>	/as ə vādip/	in the morning
<b>till</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/t̊i:l/	return
<b>fag</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/fa:g/	leave
<b>falbh</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/f[afə]v/	go away, leave
<b>airead</b> ( <i>m, 1</i> )	/[er̥e]g̊əd/	money
<b>cuidich</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/kud̊iç/	help

pàipear (m, 1)	/pe:hper/	paper
dùisg (vb)	/du:sg/	to wake up
dùin (vb)	/du:jn/	to close
doras (m, 1)	/dɔrəs/	door

### Exercise 1

Translate

- 1 Ann will drink her tea.
- 2 I will learn Gaelic.
- 3 When will you sing the song?
- 4 She will not buy white bread any time.
- 5 Will they go away early in the morning?
- 6 I will speak to him if he returns.
- 7 Where will we leave the money?
- 8 Who will help me?
- 9 I will read the paper when I wake up.
- 10 How will you close the door?

## 66 Answering questions

As usual, we repeat the main verb of the question:

An òl thu am bainne?	Will you drink the milk?
Òlaidh.	Yes.
Chan òl.	No.
An dùin thu an doras?	Will you close the door?
Dùinidh.	Yes.
Cha dùin.	No.

## 67 Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words that join two sentences together. There are two types of conjunctions:

- (a) co-ordinating conjunctions
- (b) subordinate conjunctions

### (a) Co-ordinating conjunctions

Co-ordinating conjunctions join two sentences or clauses together which are of equal importance. **Agus** 'and', **no** 'or' and **ach** 'but'

are examples of co-ordinating conjunctions. Co-ordinating conjunctions are not strictly speaking either independent or dependent particles. This is clearly seen when they are used in future sentences where the independent (i) form of a following verb is used, not the independent (ii) = relative form. Here are some examples:

**Bidh Iain ann agus bidh Anna ann cuideachd.**

John will be there and Ann will be there also.

**Chan eil am pathadh orm ach òlaidh mi fion.**

I am not thirsty but I will drink some wine.

**Seinnidh e òran no innsidh e sgeulachd.**

He will sing a song or he will tell a story.

### (b) Subordinate conjunctions

Subordinate conjunctions introduce subclauses. A subclause is a clause which is dependent on a main clause. Subordinate clauses are marked in Gaelic either by the presence of the relative particle a 'that' or a dependent verbal form. The subordinate nature of independent verbal particles is shown by the presence of the relative pronoun a 'that'. See Lesson 6, Section 52 where it was pointed out that all independent particles are followed by the relative particle a 'that'. Here are some examples:

**Tha iad a' ràdh gun dàinig Iain.**

They say that John came.

**An aithne dhut an t-àite far am bheil Anna a' fuireach?**

Do you know the place where Ann lives?

**Cha deach Mairi air lathaichean saora ged a bha an t-airgead aice.**

Mary didn't go on holiday even though she had the money.

### 67a 'Because', 'since'

There are many words in Gaelic which may be roughly translated as 'because', which can be classified into two types:

TYPE 1	TYPE 2
a chionn	because, since
a thoradh	because, since
airson	because, since
oir	because, since
	a chionn is gun because
	a thoradh is gun because

Type 2 conjunctions are dependent verbal particles and are followed by dependent verbal forms. However, type 1 conjunctions are neither followed by the relative pronoun nor by dependent verbal forms. They act, in effect, like co-ordinating conjunctions and are followed by independent (non-relative) verbal forms. Here are some examples of both:

**Chaidh mi a Pheairt a chionn bha mo charaid a' fuireach ann.**

I went to Perth since my friend was living there.

**Chaidh mi a Pheairt a chionn is gun robh mo charaid a' fuireach ann.**

I went to Perth because my friend was living there.

### 67b 'Never', 'ever'

The Gaelic word **gu bràch** is used with the future and conditional.

**Chan fhàg mi an t-Eilean Sgitheanach gu bràch.**

I will never leave the Isle of Skye.

**Chan òl mi lionn gu bràch a-rithist.**

I will never drink beer again.

**An ceannaich thu taigh ùr gu bràch?**

Will you ever buy a new house?

**Mairidh sin gu bràch.**

That will last forever.

**Gu bràch** can be emphasised by adding **tuilleadh**, e.g.:

**Cha cheannaich mi aran geal gu bràch tuilleadh.**

I will never again buy white bread.

## 68 The plural

The majority of nouns have one plural form only which is used for all forms, the nominative, prepositional and genitive. The nominative and prepositional plural forms are identical for all nouns. Some nouns, however, have a different genitive plural form as we will see below. It is important to note that the plural form of any noun may vary according to dialect, e.g.: **àiteachan** and **àitichean** are both used as the plural form of **àite** (*m*) 'place'. There are two main ways of forming the plural in Scottish Gaelic:

(A) by adding a suffix ending in **- (e)an**

(B) by slenderising the final consonant

There is no easy way of predicting what the plural form for any given noun will be. Plural forms must be learnt as vocabulary items.

### TYPE A SUFFIXES ENDING IN -(E)AN

- 1 (e)an
- 2 t(e)an
- 3 (e)achan
- 4 (a)ichean
- 5 (e)annan
- 6 slenderisation + ean

### Examples

#### TYPE A1

	Singular	Plural	
(e)an	caileag	caileagan	girls
	uinneag	uinneagan	windows
	gille	gillean	boys
	craobh	craobhan	trees

#### TYPE A2

t(e)an	sgoil	sgoiltean	schools
	baile	bailtean	towns
	teine	teintean	fires
	coille	coiltean	woods

#### TYPE A3

(e)achan	gloine	gloineachan	glasses
	balla	ballachan	walls
	àite	àiteachan	places

Balla and àite also have plural forms **ballaichean** and **àitichean** respectively.

TYPE A4

(a)ichean	bliadhna	bliadhnaichean	years
càr	càraichean		cars
clas	clasaichean		classes
latha	lathaichean		days
nurs	nursaichean		nurses

**TYPE A5**

(e)annan	àm oidhche dealbh ainm	amannan oidhcheannan dealbhannan ainmeannan	times nights pictures names
----------	---------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------

**TYPE A6**

#### **TYPE 10**

#### **Slenderisation + ean cladach anapart**

### **TYPE B SLENDERISATION**

This applies to masculine nouns only. The process of slenderisation can affect the preceding vowel, as before. See Appendix 1.

### Examples

SINGULAR	NOMINATIVE PLURAL	
bodach	bodaich	old men
òran	òrain	songs
cat	cait	cats
boireannach	boireannaich	women
Gàidheal	Gàidheil	Gaels
bòrd	bùird	tables
fiadh	féidh	deer
cnoc	cnuic	hills
Gall	Goill	Lowlanders
ceann	cinn	heads

## 68a Genitive plural

For type A suffix plurals (i.e. all plurals ending in *-an*), the genitive plural is the same as the nominative plural. For type B plurals, the genitive plural in Gaelic is different from the nominative plural and is in fact the same as the nominative singular.

Note that nouns with suffix plurals (i.e. type A) can also have genitive plural forms which are identical to the nominative

singular. Such forms are particularly common in higher registers of the language but are not uncommon in local dialects.

Here are some examples which illustrate the two types of genitive plural formation:

## 68b The plural article

As with nouns, the nominative and prepositional plural form of the article is identical; it is *na*. (This, you will recall, is also the form of the feminine singular genitive article; see Lesson 7, Section 57b.)

**Nominative (= prepositional) article (*pl*): na**

The genitive plural form of the article is **nan**:

### **Genitive article: *nan***

**nam** before the labials **b p f m**  
**nan** otherwise

NOM. SING.	NOM. PL.	GEN. PL.
uinneag	window	na h-uinneagan
caileag	girl	na caileagan
pìob	pipe	na pìoban
cat	cat	na cait
bodach	old man	na bodaich

### 68c Note on the genitive plural

When the article does not precede a genitive plural noun, the noun is automatically lenited. In other words indefinite genitive plurals are lenited, e.g.:

móran ghillean (G, pl)	a large number of boys, many boys
beagan bhòrd (G, pl)	a small number of tables

### 69 Prepositions before the article

We have already noted that the prepositional plural is always the same as the nominative plural. You will recall that most prepositions change form when they precede the singular article by adding -n or -s. Those prepositions which add -s before the singular article also add -s before the plural article. All other prepositions do not change form before the plural article except do and de which become dha and dhe respectively. Here are some examples:

anns na craobhan	in the trees
leis na gillean	with the boys
bruidhinn ris na nuraicheadan	speak to the nurses
ás na càraichean	out of the cars
bho na lathaichean sin	since those days
tro na dorsan	through the doorways
do na bodaich	to the old men
tro na h-uinneagan	through the windows

### Vocabulary

cànan (m)	/ka:nan/	language
airgead (m, l)	/[ər̥ɪə]g̥ɪd̥/	money
an deidh (+ genitive)	/ən d̥e:/, /ən d̥v-i/	after

### Exercise 2

#### Translate

- the girls and boys
- in the towns
- under the tables
- from the Gaels
- on the hills
- the teachers of the schools
- the boys' books
- the language of the Gaels
- the women's money
- after the nights

### 70 Irregular nouns: plural

There is a small handful of nouns whose plural formations are irregular and as such should be learnt separately:

NOMINATIVE SING.	NOMINATIVE PL.	GENITIVE PL.
bean (f)	wife	mnathan
cù (m)	dog	con
bó (f)	cow	bó
beinn (f)	mountain	beantan
caora (f)	sheep	caorach
sgian (f)	knife	sgeinean
leabaidh (f)	bed	leapannan
duine (m)	man	daoine
piuthar (f)	sister	peathraighean
bràthair (m)	brother	bràithrean
athair (m)	father	athraighean
màthair (f)	mother	màthraighean
mac (m)	son	mic

### 71 Numerals with nouns

Note that a only precedes numerals when they are not used with nouns. When these numerals are used with nouns, a is usually dropped. The numerals from three to ten are normally followed by the plural form of the noun. Aon and dà are followed by the

singular form of the noun which is lenited. The noun always precedes deug.

1 aon chat	one cat	11 aon chat deug	eleven cats
2 dà chat	two cats	12 dà chat dheug	twelve cats
3 trì cait	three cats	13 trì cait deug	thirteen cats
4 ceithir cait	four cats	14 ceithir cait deug	fourteen cats
5 cóig cait	five cats	15 cóig cait deug	fifteen cats
6 sia cait	six cats	16 sia cait deug	sixteen cats
7 seachd cait	seven cats	17 seachd cait deug	seventeen cats
8 ochd cait	eight cats	18 ochd cait deug	eighteen cats
9 naoi cait	nine cats	19 naoi cait deug	nineteen cats
10 deich cait	ten cats		

Deug is sometimes lenited when it follows a plural noun with final slenderised consonant but is always lenited following d(h)à + noun, e.g.:

trí cait d(h)eug	thirteen cats
naoi cnuic dheug	nineteen cats
dà chat d(h)eug	twelve cats

## 71a Dual number

There are remnants of a dual form in Scottish Gaelic. Only feminine nouns have a dual form. The dual form of feminine nouns is formed by slenderising the final consonant. This is in effect the same form as the prepositional form as we will see later.

dà bhròig	two shoes
dà chluais	two ears
dà uinneig	two windows

Recall that slenderisation can, in some instances, affect the preceding vowel (see Appendix 1), e.g.:

dà chois	two feet (from dà + cas)
dà chloich	two stones (from dà + clach)
dà chirc	two hens (from dà + cearc)

The singular rather than the plural form of the noun bliadhna 'year' is used with all numerals, e.g.:

dà bhliadhna	two years
trí bliadhna	three years
deich bliadhna	ten years

## Vocabulary

plob (f), pioban (pl) /pi:b/, /pi:bən/ pipe, pipes

## Exercise 3

Translate, writing the numerals in words:

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 3 windows  | (f) 12 cars    |
| (b) 10 schools | (g) 15 pipes   |
| (c) 7 girls    | (h) 18 songs   |
| (d) 2 classes  | (i) 2 feet     |
| (e) 8 trees    | (j) 12 windows |

## 72 Verbal nouns with pronoun objects

Verbs which are complemented by prepositions are straightforward; the object simply combines with the preposition in the usual way. Here are some examples:

Bha mi a' bruidhinn ris an-dé. I was speaking to him yesterday.

Thachair iad rithe an-uiridh. They met her last year.

An do chòrd an oidhche riut? Did you enjoy the night?

An dug Iain an t-airgead sin dhut? Did John give you that money?

When the verb is not followed by a preposition, things are not so straightforward. If we want to say 'he is making bread', we say: tha e a' dèanamh aran. If we want to say 'he is making it', we might expect to be able to say: tha e a' dèanamh e, where the pronoun object simply follows the verbal noun. While this has been a possibility in some dialects since the last century at least, the majority would say, tha e ga dhèanamh, literally 'he is at its making', where ga = aig 'at' + a 'its'. The pronoun object becomes the corresponding possessive pronoun.

Here is the full paradigm:

gam* (me)	+ lenition
gad* (you)	+ lenition
ga* (him, it)	+ lenition
ga (her, it)	prefixes h- to vowels
gar (our)	prefixes n- to vowels
gur (your)	prefixes n- to vowels
gan/gam (them)	prefixes n- to vowels

### Examples

<b>Tha Iain gam bhualadh.</b>	John is hitting me.
<b>Tha sinn gad fhaicinn.</b>	We see you.
<b>Am bheil thu ga chluaintinn?</b>	Do you hear him/it?
<b>Tha iad ga cluinntinn.</b>	They hear her/it.
<b>Tha Màiri gar coinneachadh.</b>	Mary is meeting us.
<b>Tha na balaich gur faighneachd.</b>	The boys are asking for you.
<b>Bha Anna gan iarraidh.</b>	Ann wanted them.
<b>Bha Seumas ga h-iarraidh.</b>	James wanted her/it.
<b>An robh sibh gar n-iarraidh?</b>	Did you want us?

### Vocabulary

<b>freagairt</b> ( <i>vn</i> ) /frɪ'egərsd̪/	answering
<b>fagail</b> ( <i>vn</i> ) /fa:gal/	leaving
<b>ceannach</b> ( <i>vn</i> ) /kɪ'ænəx/	buying
<b>seinn</b> ( <i>vn</i> ) /sɛɪn/	singing

### Exercise 4

#### Translate

- 1 Do you hear me?
- 2 Do you (*pl*) see it?
- 3 John is meeting them.
- 4 Were the boys hitting you (*pl*)?
- 5 Who wants us?
- 6 Ann was asking for you.
- 7 I am answering him now.
- 8 Are you leaving us here?
- 9 Are you buying it (*fem*)?
- 10 They were singing it (*masc*).

### 73 ‘Duine’

Duine (*plural daoine*) can mean ‘man’, ‘husband’ or simply ‘person’. Consider the following examples:

<b>Tha duine ag obair anns a’ għaraids.</b>	A man is working in the garage.
<b>Se Seumas an duine agam.</b>	James is my husband.
<b>Bha daoine gu leðr ann.</b>	There were a lot of people there.

Duine can also be used impersonally. Consider the following examples:

<b>Am bheil duine a-staigh?</b>	Is there anyone in?
<b>Chan eil fhiros aig duine.</b>	Nobody knows.

### Vocabulary

<b>co-latha breith sona dhut</b>	/kɔ ɿ-a br̪e sɔnə yuh/ happy birthday (to you)
<b>meal do naidheachd</b>	/mjał də ne-əxg/ congratulations (informal)
<b>sion (<i>m</i>)</b>	/ʃiən/, /ʃiɔn/ a particle, a small bit
<b>sion a dh’fhiros</b>	/sian ə jis/ a bit of knowledge, not a clue, no idea
<b>seinneadair (<i>m</i>)</b>	/ʃeɪnəd̪ər/ singer
<b>pìobaire (<i>m</i>)</b>	/pi:bər̪i/ piper
<b>fidħlear (<i>m</i>)</b>	/fi:lər̪/ fiddler
<b>an comhnaidh</b>	/ən ko:nɪ/ always
<b>math fhéin</b>	/ma he:n/ great, splendid
<b>dinnear (<i>f</i>)</b>	/di:ner̪/ dinner
<b>taigh-ċċista (<i>m</i>)</b>	/taj ċ:ċista/ hotel, pub
<b>mus</b>	/mas/ before
<b>timcheall air</b>	/tɪ'mi]çəl er̪/ around, about
<b>freagarrach</b>	/fregər̪ox/ suitable
<b>gu miċċ-ħortanach</b>	/gə mi: ċċ-ħortanax/ unfortunately
<b>tràth</b>	/tra:/ early
<b>idir</b>	/id'ər̪/ at all
<b>tagħta</b>	/taj:h̪ta/ fine, great
<b>ma-tha</b>	/mə ha:/ then
<b>an-dràsta</b>	/ən dr̪a:sə/ now, this minute
<b>cairteal (<i>m</i>)</b>	/kaɪr̪te:l/ quarter
<b>fiugħar (<i>m</i>)</b>	/fju:ər̪/ hope, expectation, looking forward to
<b>laοchan (<i>m</i>)</b>	/lɔ:xan/ good lad, friend (used only of males)
<b>a laοchain</b>	/ə lɔ:xaj/ good lad, friend (address form)

### COMHRADH

#### Co-latha breith Anna

<b>Iain</b>	Hallo, am bheil Anna a-staigh?
<b>Anna</b>	Se Anna a tha a’ bruidhinn. Có a tha agam an-seo?
<b>Iain</b>	Se Iain a tha ann.
<b>Anna</b>	Halло a Iain.
<b>Iain</b>	Co-latha breith sona dhut a Anna agus meal do naidheachd.
<b>Anna</b>	Tapadħ leat a Iain. Càite am bi sinn a’ dol a-nochd?

- Iain* Bidh chun a' chéilidh.  
*Anna* Có a bhios a' seinn aig a' chéilidh?  
*Iain* Chan eil sòn a dh'fhiös agamsa ach tha seinneadairean is piobairean is fidhleirean ás an àite seo fhéin a' dol ann.  
Seinnidh Pàdraig agus Catriona co-dhiubh. Tha òrain gu leòr acasan. Bidh iad gan seinn an comhnaidh.  
*Anna* Am bheil thu ag iarraidh dinnear anns an taigh-òsta mus fhalbh sinn?  
*Iain* Bidh sin math fhéin. Cuin a ghabhas sinn ar dinnear, ma-tha?  
*Anna* Timcheall air ochd uairean. Am bi sin freagarrach leatsa?  
*Iain* Cha bhi gu mì-fhortanach. Am bi seachd uairean ro thràth dhuibh?  
*Anna* Cha bhi idir. Tha sin taghta.  
*Iain* Glé mhath ma tha. Bidh mise gad fhàgail an-dràsta ach bidh mi gad fhaicinn ann an taigh-òsta Dhomhnaill timcheall air cairteal gu a seachd.  
*Anna* Bidh fiughar agam ri sin ma-tha, a laochain.

#### TRANSLATION

##### Ann's birthday

- John* Hello, is Ann in?  
*Ann* It's Ann who is speaking. Who is this?  
*John* It's John.  
*Ann* Hello John.  
*John* Happy birthday Ann and congratulations.  
*Ann* Thank you John. Where will we be going tonight?  
*John* To the ceilidh.  
*Ann* Who will be singing at the ceilidh?  
*John* I've no idea, but there are plenty of singers and pipers and fiddlers from this place itself going there. Patrick and Catriona will sing anyway. They have songs galore. They're always singing them.  
*Ann* Do you want dinner in the hotel before we go?  
*John* That will be great. When will we have dinner then?  
*Ann* About eight o'clock. Will that be suitable for you?  
*John* No, unfortunately. Will seven o'clock be too early for you?  
*Ann* Not at all. That will be splendid.  
*John* Very good then. I'll be leaving you just now but I'll be seeing you in Donald's Hotel about quarter to seven.  
*Ann* I look forward to that then, my good friend.

## Lesson 9

### 74 Irregular verbs: future

We learnt the past tense forms of the irregular verbs in lesson 4. We will now look at the (simple) future forms. As with the past tense, most irregular verbs distinguish between an independent and dependent form. We will see that the future forms are very different from the past forms. It is possible to group the future tense formation of irregular verbs into the following three groups:

- (i) Verbs whose independent and dependent forms differ substantially:

Independent	Dependent
their	abair
nì	dèan
chì	faic
gheibh	faigh
bheir	doir

- (ii) Verbs whose independent and dependent forms begin with **t-** and **d-** respectively:

Independent	Dependent
théid	déid
thig	dig

Note: some prefer to spell the dependent forms with an initial **t-** or even **d'th-**.

- (iii) Verbs whose future formation is regular

Independent	Dependent
beiridh	beir
bheireas (rel)	
cluinnidh	cluinn
chluiinneas (rel)	
ruigidh	ruig
ruigeas (rel)	

Note: The personal pronouns are used as usual with these verbal forms except that **tu** rather than **thu** is used after **-idh** and **-as** with group (iii) verbs as with regular verbs.

Note also that the future forms can express capability. This is particularly true of the verbs *faic* 'see' and *cluinn* 'hear'. Here are some examples:

- Cluinnidh mi an t-eun.** I can hear the bird.  
**Chì thu a' bheinn.** You can see the mountain.

Note that the regular verb *can* is used for *abair* in the future tense, the imperative and, as we will see, in the conditional also.

### Examples

**Their e riut a-màireach, nach abair.**<sup>1</sup>

He will tell you tomorrow, won't he?

**Cha bheir sinn air a' mheàirleach a-nis.**

We will not get hold of the robber now.

**Cluinnidh tu na h-eòin.**

You will hear the birds.

**Nì mi mo dhicheadh.**

I will do my best.

**Dé chì thu? Chan fhaic sion.**

What do you see? Nothing.

**Cuine a gheibh iad am plèan?**

When will they get the plane?

**Théid sinn a Glaschu.**

We will go to Glasgow.

**An ruig sibh an taigh a-nochd?**

Will you reach home tonight?

**An dig thu a chéilidh orm a-nochd? Thig.**

Will you come to visit me tonight? Yes.

**Nach doir thu an t-airgead aige air ais?**

Will you not give back his money?

In English in sentences where the main clause is in the future tense, subordinate clauses introduced by 'when' and 'if' usually appear in the present tense. In Gaelic the future tense is retained throughout in both clauses, e.g.:

**Chì sinn thu nuair a thig thu.**

We will see you when you come.

**Dé ní sinn ma théid sinn air chall?**

What will we do if we get lost?

<sup>1</sup>Commonly = canaigh e riut a-màireach, nach can?

### Vocabulary

<b>sion (m)</b>	/ʃiən/	anything
<b>bean an taighe (f)</b>	/ben ən təχə/	the woman of the house
<b>eun (m), eòin (pl)</b>	/ian/, /jɔ:p/	bird, birds
<b>seinn (vn)</b>	/ʃeɪn/	singing
<b>obair (f, 4)</b>	/obər/	work
<b>lathaichean saora (m, pl)</b>	/la-içən su:rə/	holidays
<b>direach</b>	/d'i:rəχ/	directly
<b>trèan (f, 5)</b>	/tre:n/	train
<b>dicheadh (m)</b>	/d'i:çə/	utmost, best

### Exercise 1

#### Translate

- I will not say anything to him.
- What will you give to the woman of the house?
- Do you hear the birds singing?
- Will you do the work for me?
- Will they get their holidays tomorrow?
- We will see them when they reach Glasgow.
- Will your brother go to the ceilidh?
- They will not come home directly after school.
- He will get the train when it comes.
- Will you do your best this time John?

### 75 Answering questions

As usual, we repeat the main verb of the question:

<b>An dèan thu e?</b>	Will you do it?
<b>Nì.</b>	Yes.
<b>Cha dèan.</b>	No.
<b>An cluinn thu an ceòl?</b>	Do you hear the music?
<b>Cluinnidh.</b>	Yes.
<b>Cha cluinn.</b>	No.
<b>An dig iad?</b>	Will they come?
<b>Thig.</b>	Yes.
<b>Cha dig.</b>	No.

## 76 Present habitual use of future tense

As with the regular verbs, the future tense forms may, as in English, be used to denote habitual actions, particularly when adverbs implying habit are present, e.g.:

**Chì mi Iain a h-uile latha.**

I see John every day.

**Théid Anna a Ghláschu a h-uile Di-Màirt.**

Ann goes to Glasgow every Tuesday.

## 77 The relative

We have already met the relative (= independent form (ii)) of the future tense of regular verbs (Sections 64 and 64a). In a typical relative construction we have the following elements in the following order:

ANTECEDENT +	RELATIVE PRONOUN +	RELATIVE CLAUSE
na balaich	a	chluiuch played

The antecedent may be the object or the subject of a preceding verb, e.g.:

VERB + SUBJECT + OBJECT = ANTECEDENT + RELATIVE
chunnaic Iain na balaich a chluiuch saw John the boys who played 'John saw the boys who played'

VERB + SUBJECT = ANTECEDENT + RELATIVE
dh'fhalbh na balaich a chluiuch left the boys who played 'the boys who played left'

We will only be concerned with the relative construction itself and so our discussion below will be restricted to the relative clause and the order of its elements.

The relative pronoun is an independent particle and as such is followed by independent verbal forms (independent (ii) = relative in the case of the future). Here are some examples:

**An duine a dh'fhalbh.** The man who left.

**Na caileagan a sheinneas.** The girls who will sing.

**An sgioba a bhuanneacheas.** The team that will win.

The relative clause has the following elements in the following order:

VERB + SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF RELATIVE VERB + ADVERB

To sum up, a relative construction consists of the following elements in the following order:

ANTECEDENT + REL PRONOUN + VERB + SUBJ OR OBJ OF RELATIVE VERB + ADVERB

ANTECEDENT	REL PRON	VERB	SUBJ OR OBJ OF REL VERB	ADVERB
a' chaileag	a	chaidh		a-mach
the girl	who	went		out
'the girl who went out'				
an t-òran	a	sheinn	Iain (subj)	
the song	that	sang	John	
'the song that John sang'				
am boireannach	a	dh'fhág	an taigh (obj)	an-raoir
the woman	who	left	the house	last night
'the woman who left the house last night'				
am ministear	a	sheinneas	na sailm (obj)	
the minister	who	will sing	the psalms	
'the minister who will sing the psalms'				

It will be clear from the above examples that Gaelic unlike English does not distinguish between relative clauses which contain the subject or the object of the relative verb. In other words, phrases like 'the boy who hit the teacher (*obj*)' and 'the boy that the teacher (*subj*) hit' are identical in Gaelic: *an gille a bhual an tidsear*. This does not lead to ambiguities as it is usually clear from the context which noun is the subject and which is the object of the relative verb.

### 77a Relative 'whose'

There is no one word in Gaelic to translate relative 'whose'. Instead Gaelic uses both the relative pronoun *a* and the third person possessive pronoun which agrees in gender and number with the antecedent. A typical sentence like 'the teacher whose son went to Perth, would in Gaelic become literally 'the teacher that his son went to Perth':

**An tidsear a chaidh a mhac  
a Pheairt.**

The teacher whose son went  
to Perth.

Here are some further examples:

**A' chaileag a tha a màthair tinn.** The girl whose mother is ill.  
**Na tidsearan a tha an  
clasaichean math.** The teachers whose classes  
are good.

### 77b Relative 'in which', 'with whom', etc.

Gaelic has two relative pronouns which both precede the following 'relative' verb:

- (i) **a** direct relative pronoun
- (ii) **an/am** indirect relative pronoun

We have just met the direct relative pronoun **a** in the relative clauses discussed above. When the relative clause, however, contains a preposition, the indirect relative pronoun **an/am** is used. **An** is used before verbs beginning with a labial **b**, **p**, **f**, **m**. **An/am** is a dependent particle and as such is followed by dependent verbal forms. The order of elements in indirect relative constructions is as follows:

ANTECEDENT + PREPOSITION + AN/AM + VERB (DEP) + SUBJECT

<b>an séithear</b>	<b>air</b>	<b>an</b>	<b>do shuidh</b>	<b>Ailean</b>
the chair	on	which	sat	Alan

'the chair on which Alan sat'

<b>an duine</b>	<b>aig</b>	<b>an</b>	<b>robh</b>	<b>an t-airgead</b>
the person	at	whom	was	the money

'the person who had the money'

All prepositions (other than **air**, **aig**) change form slightly before the indirect relative pronoun **an/am**. We have learnt these forms already; they are exactly the same as the forms of the prepositions which occur before the singular article. See Section 46, Lesson 6.

Prepositions which add -s:

Preposition Form of preposition before indirect relative pronoun

<b>á</b>	<b>→ ás</b>
<b>ann an</b>	<b>→ anns</b>
<b>le</b>	<b>→ leis</b>
<b>ri</b>	<b>→ ris</b>

Prepositions which add -n:

Preposition Preposition before indirect relative pronoun:

<b>bho</b>	<b>→ bhon</b>
<b>fo</b>	<b>→ fon</b>
<b>do</b>	<b>→ dhan</b>
<b>de</b>	<b>→ dhen</b>
<b>mu</b>	<b>→ mun</b>
<b>ro</b>	<b>→ ron</b>
<b>tro</b>	<b>→ tron</b>

Here are some further examples:

**na daoine ris an do bhruidhinn mi**  
the men to whom I spoke  
**am baile anns an robh sinn**  
the town in which we were  
**an rùm ás an do theich iad**  
the room out of which they fled  
**an toll dhan an do thuit an t-uaireadair**  
the hole into which the watch fell  
**a' chraobh fon am bheil an taigh aca**  
the tree under which their house is  
**am baile tron an deach sinn**  
the town through which we went

### 77c Relative 'in which', 'with whom': alternative construction

Like English, Gaelic has an alternative relative construction for relative clauses containing prepositions. The alternative to our first example above 'the chair on which Alan sat' would in English be 'the chair that Alan sat in'. The alternative construction in Gaelic is similar to the English alternative construction except that a prepositional pronoun, agreeing in person and number with the antecedent, appears instead of a simple preposition. The above example would in Gaelic literally be 'the chair that Alan sat in-it':

ANTECEDENT + REL PRON + VERB + SUBJECT + PREPOSITIONAL  
(DIRECT) PRONOUN

<b>an séithear</b>	<b>a</b>	<b>shuidh</b>	<b>Ailean</b>	<b>ann</b>
the chair	that	sat	Alan	in-it ( <b>m</b> )

'the chair that Alan sat in'

Here are some further examples:

<u>na daoine a bhruidhinn mi riutha</u>	the people that I spoke to (them)
<u>am baile a bha sinn ann</u>	the town that we were in (it)
<u>an rùm a theich iad ás</u>	the room that they walked out of (it)
<u>a' chraobh a tha an taigh aca foidhpe</u>	the tree that their house is under (it)
<u>am baile a chaith sinn troimhe</u>	the town that we went through (it)

## 78 Negative relative clauses

To negate any of the above relative clauses, we replace **a** or **an/am** with **nach** which is a dependent particle and as such is always followed by a dependent verbal form.

Here are some examples:

<b>am boireannach nach do dh'fhàg an taigh</b>	the woman who did not leave the house
<b>a' chaileag nach deach a-mach</b>	the girl who did not go out
<b>am balach nach robh a' bruidhinn</b>	the boy that was not speaking
<b>am ministear nach seinn na sailm</b>	the minister who will not sing the psalms
<b>an uinneag nach fhosgail Màiri</b>	the window that Mary does not open
<b>sin leabhar nach de leugh mi anns an sgoil</b>	that's a book that I didn't read at school
<b>am boireannach nach eil a màthair tinn</b>	the woman whose mother is not ill
<b>na daoine ris nach do bhruidhinn mi</b>	the men to whom I did not speak
<b>am baile anns nach robh sinn an rùm ás nach do theich iad</b>	the town in which we were not the room out of which they did not flee
<b>na daoine nach do bhruidhinn mi riutha</b>	the men that I did not speak to
<b>am baile nach robh sinn ann an rùm nach do theich iad ás</b>	the town that we were not in the room that they did not flee from

Note that the relative pronoun is sometimes left out in English but never in Gaelic, e.g. 'the man (that) I saw' **an duine a chunnaic mi**.

## Vocabulary

clach (f, 2)	/kjax/	stone
tilg (vb)	/t[ili]g/	throw
iuchair (f, 4)	/juxər/	key
innis do (vb)	/i: s ða/	tell to
naidheachd (f, 5)	/nē-ɔxg/, /najəxg/	news, story
sgioba (m, 5)	/sk'ibə/	team
cluich (vb)	/k'uiç/	play
ceòl (m)	/k'ɔ:l/	music
éisteachd (f, 5) ri	/e:ʃd'axg/	listening to
rathad (m, 1)	/ra-əd/	road
bruidhinn mu dheidhinn (vb)	/brui-ijn ma je-ijn/	speak about
tachair ri (vb)	/taxi'r i/	meet (with)
ceum (m, 5)	/k'e:m/	degree
an-uiridh	/ən ur'i/	last year

## Exercise 2

### Translate

- Do you know the boy who threw the stone?
- There is the woman who sang that beautiful song last night.
- Where is the book that you did not read?
- This is the the room that I left the key in.
- Is that the woman to whom you told the story?
- I like the team with which I played.
- Do you like the music that Donald was listening to?
- The road that we were speaking about.
- Is that the man you met?
- Do you know the lawyer whose son got his degree last year?

## 79 Interrogatives involving prepositions

We will now learn how to ask questions involving verbs which are complemented by prepositions, i.e. how to say in Gaelic 'to whom did you speak?'. In Lesson 5 we learnt how to say in Gaelic 'who owns the book?', which as you will recall was:

**có leis a tha an leabhar?**

This can be literally translated as 'who with-him is the book' or more accurately 'to whom is the book'. This gives us the model for other interrogatives involving prepositions:

CÓ + PREP PRON,	+ REL PRON	+ VERB +	SUBJECT + DIR OBJ
3RD SING			
có ris	a	bhruidhinn	Iain
who to-him	that	spoke	John
'to whom did John speak'			
có dha	a	dh'innis	Anna an naidheachd
who to-him	that	told	Ann the news
'to whom did Ann tell the news?'			
có aige	a	tha	an iuchair
who at-him	that	is	the key
'at whom is the key?', 'who has the key?'			

The last example gives us an example of an idiom which involves a preposition in Gaelic but not in English. Watch out for others.  
Here is one further example:

có dheth	a	dh'fhaighnich	thu
who of-him	that	asked	you
'of whom did you ask?', 'who did you ask?'			

## 80 Relative form of 'is'

Is usually combines with the relative pronoun a to give as. Is and as are pronounced identically.

an rud as toil leam	the thing that I like
sin an fheadhain as fheàrr	these are the ones which I prefer
leamsa	what do you prefer?
dé as fheàrr leat?	
ged as e droch oidhche a tha ann	although it is a bad night
nuair as ann a' dol dhachaigh	when it is going home that
a bhios tu	you will be

The relative pronoun a does not combine with the past/conditional forms of is:

an rud a bu toil leam	the thing that I would like
an rathad a b'aithne dhomh	the road that I knew

## 80a Negative relative forms of 'is'

The negative relative form of is is nach in the present tense (which lenites f); in the past/conditional it is nach bu. Here are some examples:

an fheadhain nach toil leam	the ones that I don't like
sin am fear nach fheàrr	that's the one that Ann does not prefer
le Anna	although it's not James
ged nach e Seumas a tha ann	that's a thing that I wouldn't like
sin rud nach bu toil leam	a boy whom I didn't know
balach nach b'aithne dhomh	

## 81 Adjectives: singular

### (a) Nominative

We have already learnt that adjectives are lenited when they follow feminine nouns in the nominative singular but are not lenited when they follow masculine nouns:

MASCULINE	FEMININE
cat mór	a big cat
càr dearg	a red car
leabhar geal	a white book

### (b) Prepositional

Adjectives are lenited when they follow (singular) nouns which are preceded by a preposition and the article. Adjectives are in addition also slenderised when they follow (singular) feminine nouns:

MASCULINE	FEMININE
air a' chat mhór	anns a' bhròig bhig
on the big cat	in the small shoe
fon a' càr dhearg	air a' chois mhóir
under the red car	on the big foot
anns an leabhar gheal	leis an deise dhuibh
in the white book	with the black suit

Note: Adjectives following masculine nouns which are not preceded by the article are not lenited, e.g.: fo càr dearg 'under a red car', air bòrd mór 'on a big table'.

### (c) Genitive

Adjectives are lenited and slenderised when they follow a masculine noun in the genitive:

## MASCULINE

- a' chait mhóir of the big cat  
 a' chàir dheirg of the red car  
 an leabhair ghil of the white book

Adjectives are slenderised and add -e when they follow a feminine noun in the genitive:

## FEMININE

- na bròige bige of the small shoe  
 na coise móire of the big foot  
 na deise duibhe of the black suit

There is a tendency to use the lenited and slenderised form of the adjective following feminine nouns in the genitive, especially when disyllabic feminine nouns drop the final -e of the genitive.

Compare:

- na caileige móire OR na caileig mhóir of the big girl  
 na cailliche bige na cailllich bhig of the small old woman

## Vocabulary

solas (m)	/sɔ:ləs/	light
geal	/g̊æl/	bright, white
dath (m)	/d̊aθ/	colour
deise (f)	/d̊eʃə/	suit
facal (m), facalan (pl)	/fahkəl/, /fahk̊ən/	word, words
òran (m)	/ɔ:ran/	song
ceòl (m)	/k̊ɔ:l/	music
pìob-mhór (f)	/pi:b vo:r/	bagpipe
cosgais (f)	/kɔsgəs/	cost
camara (m)	/kaməra/	camera
daor	/d̊u:r/	dear, expensive
laghach	/χ̊-χx/	kind
càraig (f)	/ka:redɪ/	couple
ceàrr	/k̊a:s/	wrong
rathad (m)	/ra:ðəd/	road

## Exercise 3

## Translate

- 1 with the small cat
- 2 on the white table
- 3 to the big girl
- 4 in the bright light

- 5 the colour of the new suit  
 6 the words of the beautiful song  
 7 the music of the bagpipe  
 8 the cost of the expensive camera  
 9 with the kind couple  
 10 on the wrong road

## 82 More on numerals

For numerals over 20, there are two ways of counting in Gaelic. The traditional system of counting operates with 20 as its base (hence it is called the vigesimal system). The Gaelic for 30 is **deich ar fhichead** which means literally 'ten on twenty'. A more modern, decimal system has been introduced into schools in very recent times. Both systems are given below:

VIGESIMAL	DECIMAL
20 fichead	fichead
30 deich ar fhichead	trithead
40 dà fhichead	ceathrad
50 dà fhichead is a deich	caogad
60 trì fichead	seasgad
70 trì fichead is a deich	seachdad
80 ceithir fichead	ochdad
90 ceithir fichead is a deich	naochad
100 ceud	ceud

Lethcheud is also used for 50. Is is short for agus 'and' in the above and following lists of numbers.

The other numbers are formed as follows:

VIGESIMAL	DECIMAL
21 a h-aon ar fhichead	fichead is a h-aon
22 a dhà ar fhichead	fichead is a dhà
29 a naoi ar fhichead	fichead is a naoi
31 a h-aon deug ar fhichead	trithead is a h-aon
38 a h-ochd deug ar fhichead	trithead is a h-ochd
41 dà fhichead is a h-aon	ceathrad is a h-aon
49 dà fhichead is a naoi	ceathrad is a naoi
51 dà fhichead is a h-aon deug	caogad is a h-aon
52 dà fhichead is a dhà deug	caogad is a dhà
66 trì fichead is a sia	seasgad is a sia
77 trì fichead is a seachd deug	seachdad is a seachd

- 88 ceithir fichead is a h-ochd      ochdad is a h-ochd  
 99 ceithir fichead is a naoi deug      naochad is a naoi

You will see that multiples of **fichead** usually precede other numerals in such phrases; but between 21 and 39, in the vigesimal system – **fichead** comes last in the phrase. The forms given above are those which are used when counting i.e. without a following noun.

## 82a Numerals with nouns

### VIGESIMAL

When these numbers are used with a noun, the noun follows multiples of **fichead** but precedes **fichead** in the numbers from 21 to 39. Note that singular forms of the noun are used with **fichead** and multiples of **fichead**, and also with **dà**. Otherwise, the plural form is used as before. Note that **a** is not used when a noun follows the numeral:

- |         |                                    |
|---------|------------------------------------|
| 21 cats | aon chat ar fhichead               |
| 22 cats | dà chat ar fhichead                |
| 29 cats | naoi cait ar fhichead              |
| 31 cats | aon chat deug ar fhichead          |
| 38 cats | ochd cait deug ar fhichead         |
| 41 cats | dà fhichead cat is a h-aon         |
| 49 cats | dà fhichead cat is a naoi          |
| 51 cats | dà fhichead cat is a h-aon deug    |
| 52 cats | dà fhichead cat is a dhà dheug     |
| 66 cats | trí fichead cat is a sia           |
| 77 cats | trí fichead cat is a seachd deug   |
| 88 cats | ceithir fichead cat is a h-ochd    |
| 99 cats | ceithir fichead cat is a naoi deug |

### DECIMAL

The singular form of the noun is used with the decimal forms. The noun may either come right at the end or it may follow the numeral which is a multiple of ten as follows:

- |         |                          |                          |
|---------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 21 cats | fichead is a h-aon cat   | fichead cat is a h-aon   |
| 22 cats | fichead is a dhà cat     | fichead cat is a dhà     |
| 29 cats | fichead is a naoi cat    | fichead cat is a naoi    |
| 31 cats | trithead is a h-aon cat  | trithead cat is a h-aon  |
| 38 cats | trithead is a h-ochd cat | trithead cat is a h-ochd |
| 41 cats | ceathrad is a h-aon cat  | ceathrad cat is a h-aon  |

- |         |                          |                          |
|---------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 49 cats | ceathrad is a naoi cat   | ceathrad cat is a naoi   |
| 51 cats | caogad is a h-aon cat    | caogad cat is a h-aon    |
| 52 cats | caogad is a dhà cat      | caogad cat is a dhà      |
| 66 cats | seasgad is a sia cat     | seasgad cat is a sia     |
| 77 cats | seachdad is a seachd cat | seachdad cat is a seachd |
| 88 cats | ochdad is a h-ochd cat   | ochdad cat is a h-ochd   |
| 99 cats | naochad is a naoi cat    | naochad cat is a naoi    |

The singular form of nouns is used with **ceud** ‘100’ and multiples of **ceud**. This also applies for **mile** ‘1,000’ and **muillean** ‘1,000,000’. Here are some examples involving the higher numbers:

- |        |   |
|--------|---|
| 1,040  | mile is dà fhichead   |
| 3,789  | trí mile, seachd ceud, ceithir fichead is a naoi              |
| 80,453 | ceithir fichead mile, ceithir ceud, dà fhichead is a trí deug |

The vigesimal system is used for years and dates. Note how years are normally broken up into two numbers as in English:

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| 1990 | naoi deug, ceithir fichead is a deich    |
| 1996 | naoi deug, ceithir fichead is a sia deug |

## 82b Age; ‘how old are you?’

Study the following phrases. Note that a **dh'aois** ‘of age’ is optional in the following phrases:

Dé an aois a tha thu?	How old are you?
Tha mi deich bliadhna a dh'aois	I am ten years of age
Tha mi còig bliadhna deug a dh'aois	I am fifteen years of age
Tha mi fichead bliadhna a dh'aois	I am twenty years of age
Tha mi aon bliadhna ar fhichead	I am twenty one years of age
Tha mi dà fhichead bliadhna is a ceithir	I am forty four years of age

### Exercise 4

#### Translate

- 45 books
- 76 horses
- 87 chairs
- 39 years of age
- 62 years of age
- 70 years of age

### 83 Use of 'de' ('of')

In Lesson 7 we saw that the genitive corresponds in many cases to the use of the preposition 'of' in English or 'de' in French. Generally speaking, the corresponding Gaelic preposition de 'of' is not used in possessive contexts. However, de 'of' is used, particularly in partitive contexts. Here are some examples:

té de na boireannaich	one of the women
fear de na balaich	one of the boys
aon de na tidsearan	one of the teachers
cuid de na daoine	some of the people
punnd de shiùcar	a pound of sugar

### 84 Countries

In Gaelic, most countries are feminine in gender and are preceded by the article:

a' Bheilg	Belgium
a' Bhreatann Bheag	Brittany
a' Chuimriugh	Wales
an Danmhairg	Denmark
an Eadait	Italy
an Eilbheis	Switzerland
an Fhraing	France
an Fhionnlainn	Finland
a' Ghearmailt	Germany
a' Ghréig	Greece
an Ólaind	Holland
a' Phólainn	Poland
a' Phortaigeil	Portugal
an Ruis	Russia
an Roinn-Eòrpa	Europe
an t-Seapan	Japan
an Spàinn(t)	Spain
an t-Suain	Sweden

Ruisia without the article is also used for 'Russia'.

The following countries are not normally preceded by the article:

Alba or Albainn	Scotland
Breata(i)nn	Britain
Canada (m)	Canada
Éirinn	Ireland
Lucsamburg	Luxemburg
Lochla(i)nn/Nirribhidh	Norway
Sasa(i)nn	England
Sina	China
an Rioghachd Aonaichte	the United Kingdom
na Stàitean Aonaichte	the United States

Some dialects use na Staidean for the 'United States'.

In the genitive Alba and Éirinn may be preceded by the article, e.g.:

muinntir na h-Alba	the people of Scotland
ceol na h-Éirinn	the music of Ireland

In literary Gaelic, Alba also has the following case forms:

Albainn (prepositional)
Albann (genitive)

### Vocabulary

gabhaibh mo lethsgual	/ga-əv mə leʃg'əl/	excuse me (polite, formal form)
tiocaid (f)	/tviç'edj/	ticket
stèisean (m)	/sde:ʃən/	station
eilean (m)	/elan/	island
an-iar	/ə niər/	western
rathad (m), rathaid (G)	/ra-əd/, /ra-idj/	road
duilich	/dulic/	sorry
aiseag (m)	/aʃəg/	ferry
trèan (m)	/tre:n/	train
bàta (m)	/ba:h̪ə/	boat
deagh*	/d̪o:/	good
àm (m), amannan (pl)	/aum/, /amənən/	time, times
bòrd-sanais (m)	/bo:rsd sanis/	notice board
caismeachd (f)	/kaʃmaxg/	signal, announcement
an comain	/ən komeɪn/	indebted, obliged
'nur comain	/nar komeɪn/	in your debt, indebted to you

**COMHRADH**

- Torcal* Gabhaibh mo lethsguel. Càit an déid mi airson nan tiocaidean?
- Anna* Théid chun an dorais anns am bheil fear an stèisein 'na sheasamh.
- Torcal* Móran taing dhut.
- Torcal a' bruidhinn ri fear an stèisein
- Torcal* Am faigh mi tiocaid a bheir á seo gu ruige na h-Eileanan An-iar mi?
- Fear an Stèisein* Gheibh agus bidh sin còig notaichean ar fhichead, a' dol taobh an Òbain.
- Torcal* An doir an tiocaid fad an rathaid mi?
- Fear an Stèisein* Tha mi duilich. Cha doir. Gheibh thu tiocaid eile airson an aiseig nuair a ruigeas tu an t-Òban.
- Torcal* Am beir an ath thrèan air a' bhàta?
- Fear an Stèisein* Beiridh agus ann an deagh àm. Chì thu amannan nan trèanaichean air a' bhòrd-shanais ach cluinnidh tu caismeachd mus dig an trèan a-staigh dhan an stèisean.
- Torcal* Tapadh leibhse. Tha mi fada 'nur comain.

**TRANSLATION**

- Torquil* Excuse me. Where can I go for the tickets?  
*Ann* To the door where the station-master is standing.  
*Torquil* Many thanks to you.

Torquil speaking to the station-master

- Torquil* Can I get a ticket that will take me from here to the Western Isles?  
*Station-master* Yes, and that will be £25, going via Oban.  
*Torquil* Will the ticket take me the whole way?  
*Station-master* I'm sorry. No. You will get another ticket for the ferry when you get to Oban.  
*Torquil* Will the next train catch the boat?  
*Station-master* Yes, and in good time. You will see the train times on the notice-board but you will hear an announcement before the train comes into the station.  
*Torquil* Thank you. I'm much obliged to you.

**Lesson 10****85 Regular verbs: conditional/past habitual: independent forms**

The forms of the conditional and the past habitual are identical in Scottish Gaelic. The conditional/past habitual is formed with short forms derived from the verbal root as with the simple past and future. The difference between independent and dependent conditional/past habitual forms is slight. They both share the same endings and differ only in that independent forms are lenited, dependent forms are not. The independent forms of the conditional/past habitual are formed as follows:

**CONDITIONAL/PAST HABITUAL:  
REGULAR VERBS: INDEPENDENT**

- 1 Lenite the initial consonant of verbal root
- 2 Prefix **dh'** to vowels and **f** + vowel
- 3 Add the following suffixes:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1 (a)inn	1 (e)amaid
2 (e)adh tu	2 (e)adh sibh
3 (e)adh e, i	3 (e)adh iad

Here are examples based on the verbs **cuir** put and **òl** drink:

<b>chuirinn</b>	I would put; I used to put
<b>chuireadh tu</b>	you would put; you used to put
<b>chuireadh e, i</b>	he, she would put; he, she used to put
<b>chuireamaid</b>	we would put; we used to put
<b>chuireadh sibh</b>	you would put; you used to put
<b>chuireadh iad</b>	they would put; they used to put
<b>dh'òlainn</b>	I would drink; I used to drink
<b>dh'òladh tu</b>	you would drink; you used to drink
<b>dh'òladh e, i</b>	he, she would drink; he, she used to drink
<b>dh'òlamaid</b>	we would drink; we used to drink
<b>dh'òladh sibh</b>	you would drink; you used to drink
<b>dh'òladh iad</b>	they would drink; they used to drink

To form the conditional/past habitual, we lenite the initial consonant of the verb or prefix **dh'** to vowels and f + vowel and add the following endings to the verbal root: (a)inn and (e)amaid for the first person singular and plural respectively; (e)adh + the appropriate pronoun for the other persons. Note tu, not thu is used with the conditional/past habitual. The ending (e)adh is also the form used with all noun subjects.

The pronouns **mi** and **sinn** are 'inbuilt' in the endings (a)inn and (e)amaid respectively. We refer to these as synthetic verbal forms. Verbal forms where the pronouns appear separated from or affixed to the verb are called analytic forms. Some dialects use analytic forms instead of (e)amaid for the first person plural e.g. **chuireadh sinn** instead of **chuireamaid**.

#### \*\*\* IMPORTANT \*\*\*

Verbs with two syllables usually ending in **-r**, **-l**, **-n**, **-ng** lose their second syllable when the conditional endings are added. Here is a list of the most important examples, illustrated with the ending (e)adh:

tachair	thachradh	would happen
fosgail	dh'fhosgladh	would open
bruidhinn	bhruidhneadh	would speak
tarraing	thàirrneadh	would pull

Note also:

innis	dh'innseadh	would tell
-------	-------------	------------

Note: final **-nn** and **-ng** are reduced to **-n** when an ending is added

#### 85a Regular verbs: conditional/past habitual: dependent forms

The independent and dependent forms of the conditional/past habitual are the same except that dependent forms are not lenited and that **dh'** is not prefixed to vowels or f + vowel. Note, however, the exceptions of **cha\***, and **nach** which lenites f. Here are some examples:

**Nach canadh tu sin a Sheumais?** Would you not say that, James?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Càite an cuireadh iad na<br>beathaichean?     | Where would they put the<br>animals?        |
| Cha għlasainn an doras a h-uile<br>h-oħidche. | I used not to lock the door<br>every night. |
| Nach fhalbhadh Anna aig<br>dà uair?           | Wouldn't Ann leave at<br>two o'clock?       |

#### 85b 'Tha': conditional/past habitual

The independent conditional/past habitual forms of the verb **tha** are:

bhinn	I would be; I used to be
bhiodh tu	you would be; you used to be
bhiodh e, i	he, she would be; he, she used to be
bhiomaid	we would be; we used to be
bhiodh sibh	you would be; you used to be
bhiodh iad	they would be; they used to be

The dependent forms are exactly the same except that they are unlenited:

binn	
biodh tu	
biodh e, i	
biomaid	
biodh sibh	
biodh iad	

When the conditional/past habitual forms of **tha** are used in the periphrastic (long) construction involving verbal nouns, the sense is usually continuous conditional/past habitual and not simple conditional/past habitual, e.g.:

bhinn ag ḥol	I would be drinking; I used to be drinking
bhiodh Anna a' seinn	Ann would be singing; Ann used to be singing

#### 85c Answering questions

As usual, we repeat the main verb of the question:

Am biodh tu toilichte?	Would you be happy?
Bhiodh	Yes
Cha bhiodh	No

An òladh sibh seo?	Would you drink this?
Dh'òladh	Yes
Chan òladh	No
An glasadh Iain an doras?	Would John lock the door?
Għlasadħ	Yes
Cha għlasadħ	No

## 86 'If'

Gaelic has two words for 'if', namely **ma** and **nan**. **Nan** is only used with the conditional/past habitual. **Ma** is used with all other tenses, i.e. past, present and future. **Nan** is a dependent particle; **ma** is an independent particle.

### 86a 'Ma'

Ma dh'fhàg thu an-sin e, càite am bheil e?	(Past)
If you left it there, where is it?	
Tha mise a' dol ann ma tha Anna a' tighinn.	(Present)
I am going (there) if Ann is coming.	
Chì mi thu ma bhios tu ann.	(Future)
I will see you if you are (will be) there.	

The clause containing 'if' is referred to as the subordinate clause; the remainder of the sentence is referred to as the main clause. When the main clause is in the past, present or future, the subordinate 'if' clause will have the same tense as the main clause and 'if' is translated with **ma**.

### 86b 'Nan'

In Gaelic, if the main clause of an 'if' sentence is in the conditional, then the 'if' clause will also be in the conditional and 'if' is translated by **nan**. Note that in English the 'if' clause appears in the past tense in such instances. Consider the following examples:

**Sheinneadh Iain nan seinneadh tusa.**

John would sing if you sang.

**Cha għlasadħ iad an doras nam birod fios aca.**

They wouldn't lock the door if they knew.

**Thogainn an iuchair nam fagadħ tu ann i.**

I would pick up the key if you left it there.

**Nan** becomes **nam** before labials **b, p, f, m**.

## 87 'Mura', 'if not'

English uses two words to express 'if not'. Gaelic uses one word: **mura**. We have seen that Gaelic has two words for 'if'. However, **mura** is used corresponding to both **ma** and **nan**. In other words, both **ma** and **nan** are negated by **mura**. **Mura** is a dependent particle:

**Innis dhomh mura bheil thu a' tighinn.**

Tell me if you aren't coming.

**Chan fhaic mi thu mura bi thu ann.**

I will not see you if you aren't there.

**Cha seinneadh Iain mura seinneadh tusa.**

John wouldn't sing if you didn't.

**Leughainn am pàipear mura binn sgith.**

I would read the paper if I wasn't tired.

**Mura** becomes **mur** before **do** in the past tense of regular verbs and those irregular verbs which have **do** in their dependent forms:

**Dèan an obair agad a Sheumais mur do rinn thu fhathast i**

Do your work James if you haven't done it yet

**Tha Domhnall ann an taigh Anna mur do dh'halbh e.**

Donald is in Ann's house if he hasn't left (unless he has left).

## 87a 'If it were not for'

'If it were not for' is translated in Gaelic as **mura b'e**. Consider the following examples:

**Dh'halbħamaid a-mach an-diugħ mura b'e an droch shide.**

We would go out today if it weren't for the bad weather.

**Bhiodh Anna toilichte mura b'e Seumas.**

Ann would be happy if it weren't for James.

## 88 'If' meaning 'whether'

When 'if' is used in a non-conditional sense in English, i.e. when it means 'whether', neither *ma* nor *nan* is used; instead we simply use the interrogative particle *an*. Consider the following examples:

**Chan eil fios agam an dàinig Seumas.**  
I don't know if/whether James has come.

**Chì sinn an dig e a-nochd.**

We will see if/whether he comes tonight.

**Saoil an e Anna a tha ann.**

I wonder if/whether it's Ann.

**Faighnich do Shile am bheil i a' tighinn.**

Ask Sheila if/whether she is coming.

### Vocabulary

<b>cuir suas ri</b> (vb)	/kur' suəs r̄i/	put up with
<b>dùisg</b> (vb)	/d̄u:ʃḡ/	wake
<b>madainn</b> (f, 5)	/mād̄ɪn/	morning
<b>nigh</b> (vb)	/ni:/	wash
<b>abhairn</b> (f)	/āv̄ɪn/, /ā-iŋ/, /āū-iŋ/	river
<b>lorg</b> (vb)	/lɔr̄ḡ/	find
<b>àite</b> (m)	/a:ht̄e/	place
<b>gabh anail</b> (vb)	/gav̄ anal/	rest, take a breather
<b>ith</b> (vb)	/i/, /iç/	eat
<b>greim</b> (m)	/gr̄eim/	a bite
<b>ach</b>	/ax/	only
<b>druthag</b> (f, 5)	/dru-aḡ/	drop
<b>direach</b>	/d̄i:r̄eɪx/	just
<b>post</b> (vb)	/pos̄d̄/	post
<b>litir</b> (f, 4)	/li:t̄ər̄/	letter
<b>dhomh</b>	/y᷑/	for me
<b>cuid</b> (f) <i>mhath</i>	/kud̄ v̄/	a fair amount
<b>gu dearbh</b>	/ḡo d̄[ere]v̄/	certainly
<b>tha fios agam</b>	/ha fis aḡəm/, /ha fisəm/	I know

### Exercise 1

#### Translate

- 1 I wouldn't put up with that.
- 2 When did you used to wake up in the morning?
- 3 Why would John believe that?
- 4 They used to wash themselves in the river.

5 We found a place where we could draw breath.

6 They wouldn't eat a bite.

7 I would only take a small drop.

8 Would you post this letter for me?

9 They would understand a fair amount of it, certainly.

10 I would open the door for you if I knew you were there.

## 89 Adjectives: comparative and superlative

### (a) Equative

The pattern is as follows:

CHO	+	ADJECTIVE	+	RI	+	NOUN
cho		sḡith		ri		seann chù
as		tired		as		an old dog

Here are some other examples:

**Tha Anna cho làidir ri Iain.** Ann is as strong as John.

**Tha Mairi cho seòlta ri sionnach.** Mary is as cunning as a fox.

The equative forms can be used adverbially:

**Tha an latha cho brèaga.** The day is so beautiful.

**Tha e cho fuar.** It is so cold.

**Tha a' chlann cho modhail.** The children are so well-behaved.

### (b) Comparative and superlative of adjectives

The comparative and superlative are identical in Gaelic and are differentiated only by the particle which precedes them, *nas* in the case of the comparative and *as* in the case of the superlative. For regular adjectives, the comparative/superlative is formed by slenderising the final consonant of the adjective and adding *e*. Slenderisation may affect the preceding vowel in the usual manner. (See Appendix 1.) *Nas* and *as* both lenite f. Here are some examples:

<b>òg</b>	<b>òige</b>	young
<b>àrd</b>	<b>àirde</b>	high
<b>dearg</b>	<b>deirge</b>	red
<b>sean</b>	<b>sine</b>	old
<b>trom</b>	<b>truime</b>	heavy
<b>brònach</b>	<b>brònnaiche</b>	sad
<b>tiugh</b>	<b>tighe</b>	thick
<b>fliuch</b>	<b>fliche</b>	wet
<b>geur</b>	<b>géire</b>	sharp

Some adjectives drop their second syllable when the final -e is added:

íseal	ísele	low
uasal	uaisle	high, noble
dileas	dilse	loyal
milis	milse	sweet

Adjectives ending in a vowel show no change in the comparative/superlative:

brèaghá	brèaghá	beautiful, lovely
buidhe	buidhe	yellow
toilichte	toilichte	happy

## 90 Irregular adjectives

Here are some of the most important adjectives whose comparative/superlative forms are irregular:

mór	motha	big
beag	lugha	small
math	feàrr	good
dona	miosa	bad
fada	faide	long
gearr, goirid	giorra	short
furasda	fasa	easy
làdir	treasa (or làidire)	strong
duilich	duilghe	hard
teth	teotha	hot

### (b1) Comparative

NAS + ADJECTIVE + SLENDERISATION + E + NA 'than'

nas òige  
younger than

Examples:

- Tha mi nas fheàrr a-nis, tapadh leat. I am better now, thank you.  
 Tha na balaich sin a' fas nas miosa. Those boys are getting worse.  
 Tha Anna nas sine na Catriona. Ann is older than Catherine.  
 Am bheil Iain nas òige na Peigi? Is John younger than Peggy?  
 Tha stàlinn nas treasa na fiadh. Steel is stronger than wood.

### (b2) Superlative

AS + ADJECTIVE + SLENDERISATION + E

as òige  
youngest

Examples:

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| an gille as òige               | the youngest boy          |
| an taigh as motha              | the biggest house         |
| sin a' chèic as milse a bhlaís | that is the sweetest cake |
| mi riamh air                   | I ever tasted             |
| Se Iain as miosa               | John is the worst         |

Nas and as are used when the main verb of the clause in which they occur is in the present or future tense. When the main verb of the clause is in the past or conditional/past habitual, the forms na bu\* and a bu\* (na b' and a b' before vowels and f + vowel) are used respectively. However, there is a tendency among younger speakers to use nas and as in all contexts. Here are some examples:

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Bha na balaich na bu mhiosa.      | The boys were worse.                      |
| Bhiodh Anna na bu mhotha          | Ann would be bigger at that time.         |
| an uair sin.                      |   |
| Bha Màiri na bu shine na Iain.    | Mary was older than John.                 |
| Bhinn na bu t(h)oilichte ri sin.  | I would be happier with that.             |
| Thàinig an nighean a bu bhrèaghá. | The most beautiful girl came.             |
| Sin an ceòl a b'fheàrr a chuala   | That is the best music that I ever heard. |
| mi riamh.                         |   |
| Chunnaic mi an taigh a bu mhotha. | I saw the biggest house.                  |
| B'e Iain a bu mhiosa.             | John was the worst.                       |

### Vocabulary

can (vb)	/kan/	say
side (m/f, 5)	/ʃi:də/	weather
suidh (vb)	/suɪd/	sit
buinig (vb)	/buŋɪŋ/	win
duais (f, 2)	/duəs/	prize
an t-Òban (m)	/ən t̪ɔ:bən/	Oban
teaghlaich (m, 1)	/t̪eɪgl̪aɪt̪/	family
sgian (f, 2)	/sɡiən/	knife
Ailean	/aɪlan/, /elən/	Alan
craobh (f, 2)	/kr̪uəv/	tree
riamh	/r̪iəv/	ever
doirbh, duilich	/d̪ɪr̪v̪/	difficult

a' Ghàidhlig ( <i>f</i> , 5)	/ə ya:lig/	Gaelic
a' Bheurla ( <i>f</i> , 5)	/ə vju:ʃələ/	English
beairteach	/ber:dɪ'ɛx/, /bjə:sdɪ'ɛx/	rich
fear ( <i>m</i> , 1) lagha	/fer ɿvə/	lawyer

## **Exercise 2**

### *Translate*

- 1 I would say that John is older than Mary.
  - 2 If the weather were better we would sit outside.
  - 3 I told you that you would win the biggest prize.
  - 4 William lived in Oban when he was younger.
  - 5 James is the eldest in his family.
  - 6 It is easier when the knife is sharper.
  - 7 Peggy is stronger than Alan although she is smaller than him.
  - 8 That is the highest tree that I ever saw.
  - 9 Gaelic is as difficult as English. (say: *the* Gaelic and *the* English)
  - 10 The teacher is not as rich as the lawyer.

## 91 ‘That’: linking clauses and reported speech

It is important to distinguish between a 'that' and gun 'that' in Gaelic. Both a and gun correspond to different functions of 'that' in English and there can be some confusion amongst learners about when to use a and when to use gun. The difference between them is this: a is a relative pronoun and gun is a conjunction. A is used following nouns, adverbs and independent particles and is followed by an independent verbal form. Gun always follows verbs, usually verbs meaning 'to say, to tell, to hear, to think, etc.' (i.e. in

**Consider the following examples:**

Có a rinn seo?	Who did this?
Dé a dh'ol thu?	What did you drink?
an t-òran a sheinn Seumas.	the song that James sang.
am bàta a thàinig a-steach.	the boat that came in.
Sann fluch a tha an latha.	It is wet that the day is.
Sann an-dé a chaidh Iain a Ghlacchu.	It is yesterday that John went to Glasgow.
Thuirt Iain <u>gun</u> robh sneachda an Glaschu.	John said that there was snow in Glasgow.
Chuala mi gun do dh'fhalbh Anna.	I heard that Ann left.

Dh'innis iad dhomh gun  
digeadh iad.

**Gheall Màiri gun tilleadh i  
a dh'aithghearr.**

**Tha mi a' smaoineachadh gun  
dàinig Iain.**

**They told me that they would come.**

Mary promised that she would return soon.

I think that John came.

Note: 'that' may be left out in English but never in Gaelic, e.g.:

**an t-òran a sheinn Iain  
chuala mi gun dàinig Anna**

Note also that **nach** serves as the negative form of both **a** and **gun**, e.g.:

**an t-òran nach do sheinn Seumas** (*rel*)  
the song that James didn't sing

chuala mi nach do dh'fhalbh Anna (*conj*)

I heard that Ann didn't leave

### 91a 'Gun': linking 'is' sentences

We have seen that all sentences involving 'is' can begin with **se** = **is + e**. When **gun** is used to link an **is** sentence to a verb phrase preceding it, **gun** and **is** combine to give **gur** which prefixes **h** to **e** as follows: (note that some dialects use **gun** and do not prefix **h** to **e**).

Thuirt Iain + se tidsear a tha ann an Anna becomes:

**Thuit Jain gur h-e tidsear a tha ann an Anna-**

**John said that Ann is a teacher.**

**Here are some other examples:**

**Tha mi a' smaoineachadh gur h-e damhan-allaidh a tha**  
I think that it is a spider.

**Dh'innis Iain dhomh gur h-e Mairi a sheinn aig a' chéilidh.**  
John told me that it was Mary who sang at the ceilidh.

**Chuala mi gur h-e co-latha breith Sile a tha ann an-diugh.**  
I heard that it is Sheila's birthday today.

### 91b Linking 'sann' sentences

As before, **gun** combines with **is** to give **gur** which prefixes **h-** to **ann**. Some dialects use **gun** and do not prefix **h-** to **ann**.

**Dh'innis Iain dhomh + sann air a' bhus a chunnaic e Catriona**  
becomes:

**Dh'innis Iain dhomh gur h-ann air a' bhus a chunnaic e Catriona.**

John told me that it was on the bus that he saw Catherine.

Here are some other examples:

**Chuala mi gur h-ann an-diugh a tha an clas.**

I heard that it is today that the class is i.e. that the class is (on) today.

**Leugh mi gur h-ann ann an Dùn Éideann a bha Donnchadh Bàn a' fuireach.**

I read that it was in Edinburgh that Duncan Bàn lived.

(See page 202.)

### Exercise 3

Link the following clauses using **gun** (**gur**) or **a** where appropriate and translate:

- 1 Thuirt Iain + bha e a-muigh an-raoir
- 2 Chuala mi + thàinig Seumas
- 3 An rud + chunnaic mi
- 4 An naidheachd + chuala tu
- 5 Thuirt Anna + se ministear a tha ann
- 6 Tha mi a' smaoineachadh + se co-latha breith Sheumais a tha ann an-diugh
- 7 Leugh mi + sann an-diugh a thachair e
- 8 Tha iad a' ràdh + sann an Glaschu a bha iad a' fuireach

## 92 Adjectives: plural

Only adjectives with one syllable have plural forms. Adjectives with more than one syllable do not change form in the plural. Nominative, prepositional and genitive plural forms are identical. To form the plural of adjectives, we add **-a** or **-e** to final consonants; **-a** is added to adjectives which end in broad consonants; **-e** is added to adjectives which end in slender consonants. Consider the following examples:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
mór	móra
beag	beaga
dubh	dubha

big  
small  
black

math	matha	good
glic	glice	clever
mìn	mìne	smooth
tinn	tinne	sick

Plural adjectives are lenited if they follow a plural noun which ends in a slender consonant (i.e. Type B plurals; see Lesson 8, Section 68). Consider the following examples:

#### TYPE A PLURALS

na caileagan òga	the young girls
na bùthan àra	the new shops
na leabhairchean matha	the good books

#### TYPE B PLURALS

na balaich bheaga	the small boys
na cait dhubha	the black cats
na boireannaich ghlice	the clever/wise women

Note that the lenited plural form of adjectives is used with the indefinite pronoun **fheadhain** 'some', e.g.:

an fheadhain bheaga	the small ones
an fheadhain mhòra	the big ones

### Vocabulary

inntinneach	/i:nd'iŋəx/	interesting
-------------	-------------	-------------

### Exercise 4

Remove the brackets and make the necessary adjustments and translate the following phrases:

- 1 caileagan (òg)
- 2 an fheadhain (geal)
- 3 cait (dubh)
- 4 clasaichean (mór)
- 5 balaich (modhail)
- 6 daoine (làidir)
- 7 bùird (glan)
- 8 pàistean (math)
- 9 leabhairchean (inntinneach)
- 10 boireannaich (beairteach)

### 93 Personal numerals

When referring to people, the following numerals are used:

dithis	two people
triùir	three people
ceathrar	four people
cóignear	five people
sianar	six people
seachdnar	seven people
ochdnar	eight people
naonar	nine people
deichnear	ten people

These numerals, unlike the other numerals we have met so far, are nouns and may be used on their own without a following noun, e.g.:

bha dithist aca ann	there were two of them there
thainig ceathrar a-steach	four (people) came into the room
dhan an t-seòmar	

All are masculine except dithis and triùir which are feminine. The lenited plural form of adjectives is generally used with the personal numbers, e.g.:

an dithis mhóra	the two big people
an triùir bheaga	the three small people

Qualifying nouns may follow these numerals, in which case they appear in the genitive plural. Recall that genitive plurals are automatically lenited when the definite article does not precede. Here are some examples:

dithis dhaoine	two people	dithis ghillean	two boys
triùir dhaoine	three people	triùir ghillean	three boys
ceathrar dhaoine	four people	ceathrar ghillean	four boys
cóignear dhaoine	five people	cóignear ghillean	five boys
sianar dhaoine	six people	sianar ghillean	six boys
seachdnar dhaoine	seven people	seachdnar ghillean	seven boys
ochdnar dhaoine	eight people	ochdnar ghillean	eight boys
naonar dhaoine	nine people	naonar ghillean	nine boys
deichnear dhaoine	ten people	deichnear ghillean	ten boys

In each case it is possible to translate as 'a twosome of ...', 'a threesome of ...', etc.

### Vocabulary

có dhiubh?	/ko: ju:/	which of?
tí (f)	/ti:/	tea
tairg (vb)	/[er̥ɪ]g̊i/	offer
plana (m), planaichean (pl)	/plano/, /planiçən/	plan, plans
luchd-ionnsachaíd (m)	/luxg̊ jü:[ə]sɔxi/	learners
Alba (f)	/[a]lbə/	Scotland
an toiseach	/ə/	firstly
cuir air dòigh (vb)	/kur̥ er̥ dɔ:j/	arrange, set up, organise
dian-chùrsa (m)	/di'an xu:sə/, /di'en xu:sə/	intensive course
labhairt (f)	/lav̥ər̥i/	speaking
mìos (f)	/miä:s/, /miô:s/	month
mair (vb)	/mar̥i/	live, last
dealbh (vb)	/di[ə]lb̥v/	create, shape, construct, design
an uair sin	/ən̥ uər̥ s̥in/	that time, then
an lorg sin	/ən̥ lɔ:g̊ s̥in/	after that, following that
cùrsa-taic (m)	/ku:sə taç̥/	support-course, back-up course
clas-oidhche (m)	/klas viç̥/	night-class, evening-class
air neo	/ər̥ nɔ:/	or, alternatively
sgoil (f)	/sgɔ:l/	school
deireadh-sheachdain (m)	/d̥i'er̥ə hexgen/	weekend
cum (vb)	/ku:m/	keep
fileanta	/filandə/	fluent
fuasgalite	/fuəsg̊i:d̥ə/	fluent, active
suidhich (vb)	/swi:iç̥/	situate
Gàidhealdachd (f)	/ge:-əj̥daxg̊/	Highlands, Gaelic-speaking area
Galldachd (f)	/gauj̥daxg̊/	Lowlands
an dà chuid	/ən̥ d̥a: xud̥i/	both
leudaich (vb)	/liadiç̥/	expand
iarr (vb)	/iər̥/	want, ask
beò	/bjɔ:/	alive
seòrsa	/ʃɔ:rsə/	type
cuir air bhonn (vb)	/kur̥ er̥ voun̥/	set up, found
boin (vb)	/bojn̥/	belong to, relate to
teagasc (vn)	/t̥egəsə/	teaching
fa leth	/fa le/	particular
is dòcha	/əs̥ ðɔ:xə/	probably, perhaps
lean (vb)	/len/	follow
dualchainnt (f)	/duəj̥xaind̥i/	dialect
modh (m) cainnte	/moy kajnd̥ə/	mode of speaking, speech
cuingichte	/kuin̥giç̥d̥ə/	restricted, limited to
beachd (m)	/bexg̊/, /bjaxg̊/	opinion
leig fios gu (vb)	/leg̊ fis g̊o/	inform

## COMHRADH

Iain a' dèanamh agallamh airson obair mar oifigeach càinain le Comann Luchd Ionnsachaidh

- Màiri* Thig a-staigh agus suidh an-seo. Có dhiubh a b'fheàrr leat tì no cofaidh?
- Iain* Cofaidh as fheàrr leamsa, gun bhainne, gun siùcar.
- Màiri* Ceart gu leòr. A-nis, nan gabhadh tu an obair seo – nan tairgeamaid dhut i – dé na planaichean a bhiodh agad airson luchd-ionnsachaidh na Gàidhlig ann an Alba an-diugh?
- Iain* An toiseach, chuirinn air dòigh dian-chùrsa labhairt a mhaireadh mìos no dà mhìos. Dhealbhainn an uair sin, an lorg sin, cùrsaichean-taic a bhiodh na bu ghiorra a ghabhadh iad ann an clasaichean-oidhche air neo ann an sgoiltean deireadh-sheachdain. Chumadh sin a' Ghàidhlig aca fileanta fuasgaite.
- Màiri* Càite an suidhicheadh tu na cùrsaichean sin? An ann air a' Ghàidhealdachd air neo air a' Ghalldachd a chuireadh tu iad?
- Iain* An dà chuid. Ann an dà àite.
- Màiri* An leudaicheadh tu air sin dhuinn?
- Iain* Dh'iarrainn gum biodh cuid aca air a' Ghàidhealdachd a chionn is gur h-ann an-sin as mothà a tha a' Ghàidhlig bed. Ach air an làimh eile, bhiodh e na b'fhasa do mhóran luchd-ionnsachaidh air a' Ghalldachd nam biodh cothrom aca air cùrsaichean a bhiodh na b'fhasige orra.
- Màiri* Nan cuireadh tu na cùrsaichean sin air bhonn, am boineadh an seòrsa Gàidhlig a bhiodh tu a' teagastg do dh'àite sam bith fa leth?
- Iain* Air a' Ghàidhealdachd, is dòcha gum biodh e na b'fheàrr nan leanamaid ri dualchainnt an àite. Ach air a' Ghalldachd, chanainn gum biodh e na b'fhasa nan taghamaid modh cainnte nach robh cho cuingichte.
- Màiri* Tapadh leat airson do bheachdan. Leigidh sinn fios thugad uair-eigin air an ath sheachdain ciamar a chaidh dhut anns an agallamh. Beannachd leat.
- Iain* Mar sin leibh.

## TRANSLATION

John doing an interview for a job as a language officer with Comann Luchd Ionnsachaidh (Learners' Society)

- Mary* Come in and sit here. Which do you prefer, tea or coffee?
- John* I prefer coffee, without milk or sugar.
- Mary* Very well. Now, if you should accept this job – if we were to offer it to you – what plans would you have for Gaelic learners in Scotland today?
- John* First, I would set up an intensive course of speaking that would last for a month or two months. Then, after that, I would design back-up courses that were shorter that they could take in night-classes or in weekend-schools. That would keep their Gaelic fluent and active.
- Mary* Where would you situate these courses? Is it in the Gaelic-speaking areas you would put them or in the Lowlands?
- John* Both. In the two places.
- Mary* Would you expand on that for us?
- John* I would want some of them to be in the Gaelic speaking area since that is where Gaelic is most alive. But on the other hand, it would be easier for most of the learners in the Lowlands if they had an opportunity to have courses that were nearer them.
- Mary* If you should set up these courses, would the kind of Gaelic you would be teaching belong to any particular place?
- John* In the Gaelic-speaking areas, perhaps it would be better if we followed the dialect of the place. But in the Lowlands, I would say it would be easier if we selected a mode of speech that wasn't so restricted.
- Mary* Thank you for your opinions. We'll let you know sometime next week how you fared in the interview. Good-bye.
- John* Goodbye.

# Lesson 11

## 94 Modal verbs

The modal verbs **feum** 'must' and **faod** 'may' are defective verbs, which usually appear in the future and conditional only.

### *Future:*

<b>feumaidh mi</b>	I must
<b>faodaidh tu</b>	you may

### *Conditional:*

<b>dh'fheumadh Iain</b>	John would have to
<b>dh'haodadh Anna</b>	Ann could

## 95 Infinitives

The infinitive form of a verb in Gaelic is the verbal noun. See Section 17. The infinitive forms of the irregular verbs **rach** and **thig** are normally a **dhol** and a **thighinn**, although **dol** and **tighinn** are also used respectively. Infinitives are used with the following auxiliary verbs and idioms:

- (a) the modal verbs **feum** and **faod**
- (b) modal idioms expressing obligation
- (c) a number of idioms expressing 'wanting, liking, hoping, capability, remembering'
- (d) verbs expressing motion or intent
- (e) the verb **sguir** 'cease'

Consider the following examples:

### VERBAL NOUN/INFINITIVE

(a)		
<b>feumaidh tu</b>	<b>falbh</b>	you must leave
<b>faodaidh tu</b>	<b>a thighinn</b>	you may come
<b>dh'fheumadh Anna</b>	<b>tilleadh</b>	Ann would have to return
<b>dh'haodainn</b>	<b>a dhol</b>	I could go
(b)		
<b>is fheàrr dhut</b>	<b>sguir</b>	you had better stop, cease

<b>bu chòir dhut</b>	<b>seinn</b>	you should sing
<b>tha còir agad</b>	<b>falbh</b>	you should leave
(c)		
<b>tha mi airson</b>	<b>seinn</b>	I want to sing
<b>tha mi ag iarraidh</b>	<b>tilleadh</b>	I want to return
<b>bu toil le Iain</b>	<b>suidhe</b>	John would like to sit
<b>tha dùil aig Màiri</b>	<b>siubhal</b>	Mary expects to travel
<b>is urrainn do Sheumas</b>	<b>draibheadh</b>	James can drive
<b>tha cuimhne agam air</b>	<b>dùsgadh</b>	I remember wakening

(d)		
<b>chaidh Iain</b>	<b>a cheannach</b>	John went to buy
<b>tha Seumas a' dol</b>	<b>a bhruidhinn</b>	James is going to speak
<b>thàinig Anna</b>	<b>a dh'fhaicinn</b>	Ann came to see

(e)	<b>sguir iad</b>	<b>a chaoineadh</b>	they stopped crying
-----	------------------	---------------------	---------------------

You will see from the above examples that 'to' is only translated before an infinitive when the auxiliary verb is a verb of motion or a verb implying intent and after the verb **sguir** 'cease'. 'To' is translated in such instances as:

- a\* before consonants
- a **dh'** before vowels and f + vowel

## 95a Indirect objects of infinitives

Objects (nouns and pronouns) of verbs complemented by prepositions simply follow the preposition, e.g.:

**Bu toil leam bruidhinn ri Seumas.**

I would like to speak to James.

**An urrainn dhut faighneachd de dh'Anna.**

Are you able to ask Ann?

**Bu chòir dhut fuireach ruinn.**

You should stay with us.

**Thàinig Iain a bhruidhinn ris a' chlas.**

John came to talk to the class.

**Chaidh Anna a dh'fhuireach comhla ri Peigi.**

Ann went to stay with Peggy.

**Tha Ailean a' dol a dh'innse dhuinn.**

Alan is going to tell (to) us.

### Vocabulary

ithe (vn)	/i-ə/, /içə/	eating
duilich	/d̪ulɪç/	sorry
falbh (vn)	/f[əl̪a]v/	leaving
cuideachadh (vn)	/kud̪eçəd̪/	helping
a-nis	/ə niç/	now
tighinn (vn)	/t̪i-ij/, t̪i-ən/	coming
coimhead (vn)	/kɔ̄jəd̪/, /kē-əd̪/	watching
fuireach (vn)	/fur̪eç/	living
dol (vn)	/d̪ɔ̄l/	going
Baile Átha Cliath	/bal a kliə/	Dublin
éisteachd (vn)	/e:ʃd̪axg/	listening
snàmh (vn)	/s̪n̪ā:v/	swimming

### Exercise 1

#### Translate

- 1 I like to eat
- 2 I have to leave
- 3 he would like to help
- 4 she wants to speak
- 5 he was going to come
- 6 she came to watch
- 7 they expect to live in Oban
- 8 you should go to Dublin
- 9 Aren't you going to listen?
- 10 Peggy can swim

### 95b Direct objects of infinitives: nouns

When the infinitive is preceded by a\*/a dh 'to', noun objects follow the infinitive directly.

**Thàinig Seumas a dh'ithe biadh.**

James came to eat food.

**Chaidh iad a cheannach leabhairchean.**

They went to buy books.

**Dh'fhalbh na gillean a chluch ball-coise.**

The boys went off to play football.

**Thàinig Anna a dhèanamh na h-obrach. (G)**

Ann came to do the work.

### Tha Peigi a' dol a leughadh a' phàipeir. (G)

Peggy is going to read the paper.

(G): A following noun object usually appears in the genitive only when the object is a definite noun. See Section 20.

### 95c Inversion

When the infinitive is not preceded by a\*/a dh', i.e. when 'to' is not translated, the object of the infinitive comes before the infinitive i.e. the normal order is inverted, and a\* is inserted between the object and the infinitive. When this a\* precedes a vowel or fh- it is usually not written in order to reflect pronunciation but it is retained here for reasons of clarity. Here are some examples:

bu toil team bruidhinn	I would like to speak
bu toil team <u>Gàidhlig a bhruidhinn</u>	I would like to speak Gaelic
bu chóir dhut ionnsachadh	you should learn
bu chóir dhut <u>Gàidhlig a ionnsachadh</u>	you should learn Gaelic

Some other examples:

**Tha Alasdair ag iarraidh leabhar a cheannach.**  
Alasdair wants to buy a book.

**Bha dùil aig Anna Iain a fhaicinn a-màireach.**  
Ann hoped to see John tomorrow.

**Dh'iarr an tidsear orm an doras a fhosgladh.**  
The teacher asked me to open the door.

**An urrainn dhut Gàidhlig a bhruidhinn.**  
Can you speak Gaelic?

Note: a is normally omitted when it appears before vowels and fh but is written here for reasons of clarity.

### Vocabulary

obair (f)	/ōbər̪/	work
dotair (m)	/d̪ɔ̄t̪ər̪/	doctor
pàigheadh (vn)	/pe:-əç/	paying
faighinn (vn)	/fe-ij/, /fe-in/, /fajin/	getting
bainne (m)	/bañə/	milk

## Exercise 2

### Translate

- 1 I must do my work
- 2 she can speak Gaelic
- 3 you should buy a new car
- 4 John wants to write a book
- 5 you had better close the door after you
- 6 we couldn't pay the doctor
- 7 we are going to get milk
- 8 Ann came to pick up her son
- 9 Donald remembers reading that book
- 10 Peggy could speak Gaelic

## 96 Direct objects of infinitives: pronouns

Direct object pronouns of infinitives do not follow the infinitive. Possessive pronouns are used instead of the ordinary pronouns to denote the objects of infinitives; they precede the infinitive. 'I would like to do it' becomes in Gaelic 'I would like its doing': *bu toil leam a dhèanamh*.

Here are other examples:

<i>Bu toil leam a faicinn.</i>	I would like to see her.
<i>Tha Iain ag iarraidh a cheannach.</i>	John wants to buy it.
<i>Tha dùil aig Seumas mo phòsadadh.</i>	James hopes to marry me.
<i>Dh'iarr iad orm an dùnadh.</i>	They asked me to close them.
<i>Tha mi airson ur coinneachadh.</i>	I would like to meet you.
<i>An urrainn dhuibh ar faicinn an-diugh?</i>	Can you see us today?

When a\*/\*a dh' precedes the infinitive, the possessive pronouns combine with it to give the following forms:

gam*	gar
gad*	gur
ga*	gan/gam
ga	

Examples:

<i>Tha sinn a' dol ga choimhead.</i>	We are going to watch it.
<i>Thainig na caileagan ga dùsgadh.</i>	The girls came to wake her.
<i>Chaidh Iain gan iarraidh.</i>	John went to get them.

## 96a Demonstrative pronouns as objects of infinitives

The demonstrative pronouns seo, sin, siud are treated like nouns, e.g.:

<i>Thàinig Anna a dhèanamh sin.</i>	Ann came to do that.
<i>Bu toil leam sin a dhèanamh.</i>	I would like to do that.
<i>Feumaidh mi seo a ràdh.</i>	I must say this.

## 97 'A bhith', 'to be'

The infinitive form of the verb tha is a bhith. It cannot be used with the periphrastic construction involving tha, unlike other infinitives/verbal nouns. Here are some examples:

<i>Bu toigh leam a bhith an Glaschu.</i>	I would like to be in Glasgow.
<i>Tha mi a' dol a bhith an Dùn Éideann.</i>	I am going to be in Edinburgh.
<i>Tha dùil aca a bhith a' falbh.</i>	They expect to be leaving.
<i>Bu chòir dhut a bhith modhail.</i>	You should be well behaved.
<i>Tha Domhnall a' dol a bhith ag obair.</i>	Donald is going to be working.

## Vocabulary

iасg (m, l)	/iəsg/	fish
tha eagal air Iain	/ha egəl ər i-ap/	John is afraid
tarraing (vn)	/tarɪŋ/	pull
ròpa (f, 5)	/rɔ:hɒpə/	rope
coimhead (vn)	/kɔ:jəd/, /kɛ:əd/	watching, seeing (of visit)
glanadh (vn)	/gjənəy/	cleaning
bòrd (m), bùird (pl)	/bo:rsd/, /bu:rsd/	table, tables
is fheàrr le Màiri	/jə:z̪ le ma:r̪i/	Mary prefers
creidsinn (vn)	/kr̪ed̪iŋ/	believing
dùsgadh (vn)	/du:sgəy/	wakening
cuideachadh (vn)	/ku:d̪əxəy/	helping
òran (m, l)	/ɔ:ran/	song
ràdh (vn)	/ra:(y)/	saying

## Exercise 3

### Translate

- 1 He likes to eat it (m).
- 2 Ann hoped to sing it (m) at the ceilidh.

3 John was afraid to pull it (*f.*).

4 The young boys have to clean them.

5 Calum went to watch her.

6 Mary prefers to teach it (*f.*).

7 You should believe us.

8 Ann is going to waken them.

9 We would like to help you.

10 James remembers saying that.

## 98 Perfect

A periphrastic construction is used to form the perfect in Gaelic. It is similar to that which we learnt for the present tense except that air 'after' replaces aig 'at'. Compare:

**Tha Iain a' tighinn.** John is coming.

**Tha Iain air tighinn.** John has come, lit 'John is after coming'.

Here are some other examples:

**Tha Anna air falbh.** Ann has left.

**Tha Uilleam air tilleadh.** William has returned.

**Tha iad air a dhol a-mach.** They have gone out.

**Tha Màiri air seinn.** Mary has sung.

Direct objects are inverted and placed before the verbal noun as before (see Section 95c):

**Tha Calum air leabhar a cheannach.** Calum has bought a book.

**Tha Niall air Gàidhlig a ionnsachadh.** Neil has learnt Gaelic.

**Tha Dàibhidh air an doras a pheantadh.** David has painted the door.

Note that when the object is preceded by the definite article, it does not take the prepositional form after the preposition air, e.g.:

**Tha Raibeart air an cù a bhiadhadh mar-thà.**

Robert has fed the dog already.

**Tha Anna air am borbair a phàigheadh.**

Ann has paid the hairdresser.

## 98a Pluperfect

The pluperfect is formed by replacing tha with the past form, bha in the periphrastic perfect construction:

**bha Anna air tighinn** Ann had come

**bha Uilleam air tilleadh**

**bha iad air a dhol a-mach**

**bha Màiri air seinn**

**bha Calum air leabhar a cheannach**

Calum had bought a book

**bha Niall air Gàidhlig a ionnsachadh**

Neil had learnt Gaelic

**bha Dàibhidh air an doras a pheantadh**

David had painted the door

William had returned

they had gone out

Mary had sung

## 98b Future perfect

The future perfect is formed by replacing tha with the future form bidh in the periphrastic perfect construction:

**bidh Anna air falbh**

Ann will have left

**bidh Uilleam air tilleadh**

William will have returned

**bidh iad air a dhol a-mach**

they will have gone out

**bidh Màiri air seinn**

Mary will have sung

**bidh Calum air leabhar a cheannach**

Calum will have bought a book

**bidh Niall air Gàidhlig a ionnsachadh**

Neil will have learnt Gaelic

**bidh Dàibhidh air an doras a pheantadh**

David will have painted the door

## 98c Conditional perfect

The conditional perfect is formed by replacing tha with the conditional form bhiodh in the periphrastic perfect construction:

**bhiodh Anna air falbh**

Ann would have left

**bhiodh Uilleam air tilleadh**

William would have returned

**bhiodh iad air a dhol a-mach**

they would have gone out

**bhiodh Màiri air seinn**

Mary would have sung

**bhiodh Calum air leabhar a**

Calum would have bought a book

**bhiodh Niall air Gàidhlig a**

Neil would have learnt Gaelic

**bhiodh Dàibhidh air an doras a**

David would have painted the

**pheantadh**

door

The pluperfect is also formed with **an deidh** and the infinitive as follows:

**an deidh do Sheumas tilleadh**

after/when James had returned (*lit* 'after returning by James')

**an deidh do Chàtriona an cat a chur a-mach**

after/when Catherine had put out the cat

**an deidh dhomh mo bhracaist a ghabhail**

after/when I had had my breakfast

**an deidh dhi an sgoil a fhágail**

after/when she had left the school

**an deidh dhuinn an obair againn a dhèanamh**

after/when we had done our work

### 98d The immediate perfect

The immediate perfect is formed by inserting **direach** 'just' before **air** in the ordinary perfect construction.

**tha Màiri direach air tighinn**

Mary has just arrived

**tha iad direach air falbh**

they have just left

**tha mi direach air an doras a dhùnadadh** I have just closed the door

### Vocabulary

<b>litir</b> ( <i>f</i> )	/kiht'erɪ/	letter
<b>cuideam</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/kud'eɪm/	weight
<b>cuir air</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/kur' erɪ/	to put on (of weight)
<b>tòisich</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/tɔ:sɪç/	begin, start
<b>oilthigh</b> ( <i>m</i> )	/ɔlvɪ/	university
<b>an t-seachdain seo tighinn</b>	/ən t'içkən sə t'i-ip/	next week
<b>reic</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/reçk'/	selling
<b>ionnsaich</b> ( <i>vb</i> )	/jū:psɪç/	learn
<b>cruinneachadh</b> ( <i>vn</i> )	/krwɪnɛçəd̪/	gathering
<b>fiosrachadh</b> ( <i>m, l</i> )	/fɪs'rəçəd̪/	information

### Exercise 4

#### Translate

1 Robert has just gone.

2 Joan has come.

3 John has written the letter.

4 He has put on weight.

5 They have gone out.

6 Mary will have started in the university next week.

7 Ann has sold the old house at last.

8 James would have learnt Gaelic.

9 John has eaten too much already.

10 After Neil had gathered all of the information.

### 99 'Ri' + noun

Ri followed by a noun (mostly verbal nouns) can imply:

- (i) being engaged in something
- (ii) that something is to be done

Consider the following examples:

- (i) being engaged in something

**bha na balaich ri eughachd**

the boys were screaming

**bha a' chlann ri caoineadh**

the boys were crying

**tha Iain ri sgriobhadh an comhnaidh**

John is writing always

**bha Anna ri ceòl fad a beatha**

Ann was at music all her life

**bidh iad ri iasgach as t-earrach**

they will be at fishing in the

Spring time

- (ii) something is to be done

The formula is:

THA + SUBJECT + RI + POSSESSIVE PRONOUN A\* + VERBAL NOUN

**tha obair ri a**

**dhèanamh**

there is work to be done

Here are some further examples:

**tha gu leòr ri a ràdh**

there is much to be said

**bha cus ri a ithe**

there was too much to eat

**tha Iain ri a mholadh**

John is to be praised

Note: **ri a** is pronounced **ri here**.

### 100 'Gu' + verbal noun

Gu followed by a verbal noun implies 'about to, on the point of, almost':

**tha mi gu spreadhadh**

I am almost bursting

**tha e gu bristeadh**

it is about to break

**tha iad gu bhith deiseil**

they are almost ready

(*lit* 'about to be ready')

## Vocabulary

### Colours

The colour systems used in Gaelic are slightly different to those used in English, most notably with the colours grey, green, and blue.

geal	/g̊al/	white, bright
dubh	/du/	black
gorm	/g[ɔ̄rɔ̄]m/	(dark) blue, green
uaine	/uən̄e/	green
glas	/g̊las/	grey, grey-green
liath	/liə/	(light) blue, grey
dearg	/d̊[ara]g/	(bright) red
ruadh	/r̊euð/	(darker) red
buidhe	/būjə/	yellow
orains	/ɔ̄rən̄ʃ/	orange
donn	/douŋ/	brown
bàn	/ba:n/	fair (of hair), pale
pinc	/piŋ̊g̊i/	pink

## 101 Ordinal numbers (first, second ...)

Most ordinal numbers are formed by adding **-th(e)amh** or **-(e)amh** to the basic numeral except in the case of 'first, second, third' which have special forms. The ordinal numbers are normally preceded by the article. The following examples are illustrated with the word **fear**, here meaning 'one':

1st a' cheud* shear	the first one
2nd an dàrna/dara fear	the second one
3rd an treas/tritheamh fear	
4th an ceathramh fear	
5th an còigeamh fear	
6th an siathamh fear	
7th an seachdamh fear	
8th an t-ochdamh fear	
9th an naoitheamh fear	
10th an deicheamh fear	
11th an t-aonamh fear deug	
12th an dàrna/dara fear deug	
13th an treas/tritheamh fear deug	
18th an t-ochdamh fear deug	
20th an fícheadamh fear	

### VIGESIMAL

21st an t-aonamh fear ar fhichead
22nd an dàrna/dara fear ar fhichead

### DECIMAL

am fícheadamh fear is a h-aon
am fícheadamh fear is a dhà

29th an naoitheamh fear ar fhichead	am fícheadamh fear is a naoi
30th an deicheamh fear ar fhichead	an trítheadamh fear
31st an t-aonamh fear deug ar fhichead	an trítheadamh fear is a h-aon
35th an còigeamh fear deug ar fhichead	an trítheadamh fear is a còig
40th an dà fhicheadamh fear	an ceathradamh fear
41st an dà fhicheadamh fear is a h-aon	an ceathradamh fear is a h-aon
42nd an dà fhicheadamh fear is a dhà	an ceathradamh fear is a dhà
49th an dà fhicheadamh fear is a naoi	an ceathradamh fear is a naoi
50th an dà fhicheadamh fear is a deich	an caogadamh fear
55th an dà fhicheadamh fear is a còig deug	an caogadamh fear is a còig
60th an trì fhicheadamh fear	an seasgadamh fear
61st an trì fhicheadamh fear is a h-aon	an seasgadamh fear is a h-aon
100th an ceudamh fear	
1,000th an mileamh fear	
1,000,000th an muilleanamh fear	

Here are some examples involving **latha** 'day':

- 8th an t-ochdamh latha
- 12th an dàrna/dara latha deug
- 27th an seachdamh latha ar fhichead
- 31st an t-aonamh latha deug ar fhichead or a' cheud latha deug ar fhichead

## Vocabulary

Oidhche na Blàdhna Ùire /viçə nə blāx u:r̊/ Hogmanay, New Year's Eve

Bliadhna Mhath Ùr	/blāx̊n̄ və u:r̊/	Happy New Year
a leithid	/a lehid̊/	its like, the same
drama (m)	/dramə/	a dram, a drink of whisky
dòirt (vb)	/dɔ̄:rsd̊/	pour
tog (vb)	/tɔ̄g/	raise, lift
foghain (vb)	/fo:ij/	suffice
foghnaidh sin	/fo:ni ſin/	that will suffice
céiliadh (vn)	/k'el:i/	visit, visiting
a' cheud*	/ə çiəd̊/	the first
céiliche (m)	/k'el:i:liçə/	visitor
nochadh (vn)	/nɔ̄xgəy/	appearing, showing up
ruigheachd (vn)	/rūjgəxg/	reaching, getting to
fas (vb)	/fa:s/	growing
mear	/mer/	merry
ceann (m)	/k'auŋ/	head, end
stiall ort (vb)	/sdi:ɬ̊ ɔ̄səd̊/	on you go, continue
làn dì do bheatha	/la:n̄ d̊i: ðə vēha/	you are very welcome
ged-ta	/gēd̊a:/	however
tadhal (vn)	/t̊æd̊/	visiting
grunn	/gru:ŋ/	a good deal, a lot
grian (f)	/gr̊iən/	sun
sgrìob (f)	/sgr̊i:b/	trip
di-beathte	/d̊i:b̊ēt̊ə/	welcome

togail ( <i>vn</i> )	/tɔgal/	raising, taking
fairich ( <i>vb</i> )	/far'iç/	perceive, feel
seachad	/ʃəxad/	past
feuch ( <i>vb</i> )	/fiax/	see, make sure

## COMHRADH

### Oidhche na Bliadhna Ùire

- Donnchadh* Thig a-staigh a Theàrlaich. Is math d'fhaicinn.
- Tearlach* Bliadhna Mhath Ùr a Dhonnchaidh. Bliadhna Mhath Ùr a Mhàiri.
- Donnchadh* A leithid eile dhuibh fhéin is móran dhiubh.
- Tearlach* Feumaidh tu drama a ghabhail. Seo agad uisge-beatha math. Gloine dhut an-seo.
- Donnchadh* Tog, tog. Foghnaidh sin.
- Tearlach* Do dheagh shlàinte. 'A h-uile latha a chì is nach fhaic.'<sup>1</sup> An dàinig duine eile a chéilidh oirbh mar-tha?
- Donnchadh* Cha dàinig. Is tu fhéin a' cheud chéiliche a tha air nochdadh gu ruige seo. Nach e a Mhàiri?
- Màiri* Se. Chan fhaca sinn duine eile fhastast.
- Tearlach* Seo an treas taigh a tha mise air a ruigheachd a-nochd.
- Donnchadh* Sann a bhios tu a' fas mear a Theàrlaich. Is dòcha gum bu chòir dhut beagan uisge a chur 'na cheann. B'fheàrr leamsa a ghabhail direach mar a tha e.
- Tearlach* Nach tusa a dh'fhaodas a bhalaich. Stiall ort – agus làn di do bheatha.
- Tearlach* Chan fheum mi cus a òl ged-ta. Tha dùil agamsa tadhail ann an grunn thaighean eile mus éirich a' ghrian.
- Donnchadh* Sann a dh'fhaodainn fhìn a dhol comhla riut. Tha mi air a bhith aig baile fad na h-oidhche. Is bu toil leam sgrìob a ghabhail a-mach.
- Tearlach* Dèan sin gu dearbh. Chan eil an oidhche ach òg fhastast. Ach aon drama eile mus fhalbh sinn, ma-tha.
- Donnchadh* Tapadh leat fhéin a Theàrlaich.
- Tearlach* Tha thu di-beathte – glé dhi-bheathte. Slàinte mhath.
- Donnchadh* Tha còir againn a bhith a' togail oirnn. Seall an uair a tha e.

<sup>1</sup>'Every day that (we) see (one another) or not.' The expression wishes good health at all times.

- Tearlach* Oidhche mhath a bhean an taighe.
- Màiri* Oidhche mhath a Theàrlaich agus tapadh leat airson do chéilidh. Cha do dh'fhaich sinn an oidhche a' dol seachad. A Dhonnchaidh, feuch nach bi thu ro anmoch a' tighinn dhachaigh!

## TRANSLATION

- Hogmanay*
- Duncan* Come in Charles. It's good to see you.
- Charles* Happy New Year Duncan. Happy New Year Mary.
- Duncan* The same to you and many of them.
- Charles* You'll have to take a dram. Here's a good whisky for you. A glass for you here.
- Duncan* Stop, stop.<sup>2</sup> That will do.
- Charles* Your good health. 'Every day we see and don't.' Has anyone else visited you already?
- Duncan* No one. You're the first visitor who has appeared until now. Isn't he Mary?
- Mary* He is. We haven't seen anybody else yet.
- Charles* This is the third house I've got to tonight.
- Duncan* Then you will be getting merry, Charles. Perhaps you should put a little water in it.
- Charles* I would rather take it just as it is.
- Duncan* And well you may boy. On you go – and very welcome you are!
- Charles* I mustn't drink too much, though. I expect to call in a number of other houses before the sun rises!
- Duncan* Indeed, I could go with you myself. I've been at home all night. And I'd like to take a trip out.
- Charles* Do that indeed. The night is but young yet. But one more dram before we go, then.
- Duncan* Thank you, Charles.
- Charles* You're welcome, very welcome. Good health.
- Duncan* We ought to be setting off. Look at the time.
- Charles* Good night, lady of the house!
- Mary* Good night, Charles and thank you for your visit. We didn't feel the night passing. Make sure you're not too late coming home, Duncan.

<sup>2</sup>lit lift (stop pouring).

# Lesson 12

## 102 Irregular verbs: conditional/past habitual

It is possible to group conditional/past habitual formation into two groups:

(i) Verbs whose formation is regular:

INDEPENDENT	DEPENDENT	
bheireadh	beireadh	would catch
chluinneadh	cluinneadh	would hear
dhèanadh	dèanadh	would do/make
rachadh	rachadh	would go
ruigeadh	ruigeadh	would reach

(ii) Verbs whose independent and dependent forms are different:

INDEPENDENT	DEPENDENT	
theireadh	abradh	would say
chitheadh	faiceadh	would see
gheibheadh	faigheadh	would get, find
thigeadh	digeadh	would come
bheireadh	doireadh	would give

Note: some prefer to spell the dependent forms of the last two verbs with an initial *t-* or even *d'th-*.

Note: the endings we learnt for the regular verbs are also used with the irregular verbs. Consider the following example:

chluinninn	I would hear
chluinneadh tu	you would hear
chluinneadh e/i	he/she would hear
chluinneamaid	we would hear
chluinneadh sibh	you would hear
chluinneadh iad	they would hear

The conditional/past habitual forms of the verbs *cluinn* and *faic* can imply 'capability' as with the future forms:

**Chluinneadh tu na h-eòin a' seinn.**

You could hear the birds singing.

**Chitheadh tu na reultan anns an adhar.**

You could see the stars in the sky.

Note: the regular verb **can** may be used for **abair** in the conditional/past habitual as in the future tense and imperative.

Examples

**Theirinn ris gun robh e gòrach sin a dhèanamh.**

I would say to him that he was silly to do that.

**Bheireadh i air a' chupa mus ruigeadh e an lèar.**

She would catch the cup before it reached the floor.

**Dé chluinneadh a' chlann nuair a bhiodh iad a-muigh?**

What would the children hear when they were out?

**Dhèanadh iad an obair sin gun teagamh.**

They would do that work without doubt.

**Chitheamid a' mhuir a-mach romhainn.**

We could see the sea before us.

**Chan fhraigheadh tu móran airgid air a shon.**

You wouldn't get much money for it.

**Rachainn ann nan digeadh tusa còmhla rium.**

I would go there if you came along with me.

**Thigeadh Anna gam choimhead nam biodh an tìne aice.**

Ann would come to see me if she had the time.

**Cha doireadh iad sgilling dhut.**

They wouldn't give you a penny.

## 102a Answering questions

As usual, the verb is echoed:

**An digeadh tu comhla rium?** Would you come with me?

Yes.

**Cha digeadh.**

No.

**An doireadh Anna an leabhar do Pheigi?** Would Ann give the book to Peggy?

Yes.

**Bheireadh.**

No.

**Cha doireadh.**

## Vocabulary

toilichte	/tɔ:lɪçt̪ə/	pleased
uabhasach toilichte	/üävəsəχ tɔ:lɪçt̪ə/	very, terribly pleased
balgam (m) tea	/b[ə:l]gæm ti:/	some tea ( <i>lit</i> 'a mouthful')
ceart gu leòr	/k'ær̪d̪ gə lɔ:r̪/	right enough, OK
càirdean, companaich (m, pl)	/ka:rsd̪'ən/, /koumbaniç/	friends

taigh-tasgaidh (m)	/t̪ɪŋ t̪asgɪ/	museum
mios (f)	/miəs/, /mīəs/	month
suidheachan (m, 1)	/sujəxan/	seat
pléan (m)	/ple:n/	aeroplane
uisge (m)	/uʃg̊e/	rain
drama	/d̪ra:ma/	drama (play)
cùil (f)	/ku:l/	corner
aiseag (m)	/aʃəg/	ferry
mu dheireadh	/ma jər̪əy/ last	the likes of that
a leithid sin	/ə lehid̪ iʃin/	anywhere
àite sam bith	/a:ht̪iə səm bi/	other, else
eile	/elə/	permission
cead (m)	/k̪ed/	

### Exercise 1

Translate

- 1 I would be very pleased if they came.
- 2 He would drink some tea right enough.
- 3 They would see their friends at school.
- 4 We used to go to the museum every month.
- 5 You would not get a seat on the aeroplane now.
- 6 Would you say that John would go out to the drama?
- 7 Would you get the bus from that corner?
- 8 You would catch the last ferry at nine o'clock.
- 9 You would not hear the likes of that anywhere else.
- 10 Donald's mother would not give him permission to go out.

### 103 ‘Usually’

If we want to say someone usually or frequently does something, we use the idiom **is àbhaist do** which means literally ‘it is customary for’ as follows:

IS + ÀBHAIST + DO\* + SUBJECT + A BHITH + VERBAL NOUN + ADVERB

**is àbhaist do Sheumas a bhith a' seinn**  
James usually sings

Here are some more examples:

**Is àbhaist do Mhàiri a bhith a' dùsgadh tràth.**  
Mary usually wakes up early.

**Is àbhaist dhomh a bhith a' dol a dh'Eirinn as t-samhradh.**  
I usually go to Ireland in the summer.

Negative forms:

**Chan àbhaist do Mhórag a bhith a' smocadh.**

Morag doesn't usually smoke.

**Chan àbhaist dhut a bhith a' draibheadh.**

You don't usually drive.

Interrogative (positive) forms:

**An àbhaist do Dhomhnall a bhith a' cluich ball-coise?**

Does Donald usually play football?

**An àbhaist dha a bhith a' dol a dh'Uibhist?**

Does he usually go to Uist?

Interrogative (negative) forms:

**Nach àbhaist do Ruairi a bhith ag ithe feòil?**

Doesn't Ruairi usually eat meat?

**Nach àbhaist dhi a bhith a' dol a-mach feasgar?**

Does she not usually go out in the evening?

In reply to these positive and negative interrogative forms **An/nach àbhaist . . . ?**, we find:

<b>Is àbhaist</b>	<b>Yes</b>
<b>Chan àbhaist</b>	<b>No</b>

### 104 ‘Used to’

**Is àbhaist do** becomes **b'àbhaist do** in the past tense and means ‘used to’. It is frequently used instead of the past habitual. Here are some examples:

**B'àbhaist do Mhàiri a bhith ag obair ann an Glaschu.**  
Mary used to work in Glasgow.

**Cha b'àbhaist dha a bhith ag obair cho dian.**  
He didn't use to work so hard.

**Nach b'àbhaist dhut a bhith ag ionnsachadh Gàidhlig? Cha b'àbhaist.**

Didn't you use to learn Gaelic? No.

**Nach b'àbhaist do Chàrliona a bhith a' teagasc?** **B'àbhaist.**  
Didn't Catherine use to be teaching? Yes.

## 105 Past particles and the perfective

Gaelic uses a small number of past participles. Here is a list of those which are most commonly used:

pòsta	married
sgriobhte	written
reòite	frozen
stéidhichte	established
foghlaimte	learned, educated

Some past participles have developed 'new' meanings:

seòlta	cunning, clever
sgiobalta	tidy, neat
gleusta	canny, prudent
do-dhèante	impossible

The perfective is normally formed in a similar way as the perfect. See Lesson 11, Section 98. The pattern is as follows:

THA + SUBJECT + AIR + POSS PRON (AGREEING WITH SUBJ)	+ VERBAL NOUN
tha am feur air a*	ghearradh
the grass is cut	

Here are some further examples:

bha am fiadh air a mharbhadh	the deer was killed
an robh Niall air a bhualadh?	was Neil hit?
bha an t-uisge beatha air a òl uile gu léir	the whisky was all drunk
cha robh na bàtaichean air an càrachadh	the boats were not fixed
an robh Mórag air a taghadh?	was Morag (s)elected?

Note that these perfectives can also have passive meaning. See below.

## 106 Passive

In Gaelic a passive sentence like 'the door was closed' can be expressed in three ways:

(a) by using the auxiliary verb **rach** 'go' + subject + a\* + verbal noun:

**chaidh an doras a dhùnadh**      the door was closed

(b) by using the perfective construction introduced above: THA + SUBJECT + AIR + POSS PRON (AGREEING WITH SUBJ) + VERBAL NOUN

**bha Niall air a bhualadh**      Neil was hit

(c) by using special impersonal forms of the verb:

**dhùineadh an doras**      the door was closed

Type (a) is the most commonly used in modern Gaelic. Type (c) is frequently used in literary Gaelic although it also occurs in ordinary spoken Gaelic.

Here are some more examples of type (a):

<b>chaidh Iain a bhualadh</b>	John was hit
<b>cha deach an telebhisean a ghoid</b>	the television was not stolen
<b>An deach am biadh a ithe?</b>	Was the food eaten?
<b>théid an càr a reic</b>	the car will be sold

If the subject of a passive sentence of type (a) is a pronoun, possessive pronouns are used with the verb **rach** and the verbal noun as follows:

<b>chaidh mo bhualadh</b>	I was hit (lit 'my hitting went/passed')
<b>chaidh do mholadh</b>	you were recommended/praised
<b>chaidh a dhèanamh</b>	it was done
<b>chaidh a pòsadh</b>	she was married
<b>chaidh ar stiùireadh</b>	we were directed
<b>an deach ur leantainn?</b>	were you followed?
<b>cha deach an clò-bhualadh</b>	they were not printed yet
<b>fhathast</b>	

Here are some examples of type (b):

<b>bha an càr air a ghoid</b>	the car was stolen
<b>bha an t-àite air a fionadh le uisge</b>	the place was filled with water

The following phrase using type (c) is used in all dialects.

**rugadh is thogadh mi ann an Alba**  
I was born and brought up in Scotland

The agent of a passive sentence is introduced by the preposition **le** 'with' or in some cases by the preposition **aig** 'at' as follows:

chaidh a' bhùth a cheannach le Iain  
the shop was bought by John

chaidh a' chaora a leagail le càr  
the sheep was knocked down by a car

an deach Anna a bhreabadh leis an each?  
was Ann kicked by the horse?

bha Iain air a bhualadh aca  
John was hit by them

## 107 Impersonal verbal forms

### Type C

The past, future and conditional/past habitual all have impersonal forms. In each case, the impersonal forms consist of endings which are attached to the relevant tense form of the verb. Here are the impersonal forms illustrated with the verb **dùin** 'close' and **buail** 'hit':

<b>dhùineadh</b> an doras	the door was closed, someone closed the door
<b>dùinear</b> an doras	the door will be closed, someone closes the door
<b>dhùinte</b> an doras	the door would be closed, the door used to be closed, someone would close the door, someone used to close the door
<b>bhuaileadh</b> mi	I was struck, someone struck me
<b>buailear</b> e	he will be struck, someone will strike him
<b>bhuailte</b> iad	they would be struck, they used to be struck, someone would strike them, someone used to strike them

The impersonal use of these forms is clearly seen with intransitive verbs, i.e. verbs which do not have objects, e.g.:

**thathar a' dol ann a h-uile bliadhna**  
one is/people are going there every year

**thigear an-seo a h-uile madainn**  
one comes/people come here every morning

**chan urrainnear tiocaid a cheannach an-seo**  
one cannot buy a ticket here

**dh'fheumte a dhol ann**  
one had to go there/people had to go there

## 108 Independent and dependent impersonal forms

Independent and dependent forms are identical in the future. In the past the distinction between both forms is as with other forms of the past: dependent form = **do** + independent form. The difference in the conditional/past habitual is as with other forms: the independent forms are lenited; the dependent forms are not lenited. This may be summarised as follows:

### IMPERSONAL FORMS:

TENSE	INDEPENDENT	DEPENDENT
PAST	lenition + (e)adh <b>dh'</b> + (f) vowel + (e)adh	<b>do</b> + independent forms
PRESENT	(e)ar	(e)ar
COND/PAST HAB	lenition + te <b>dh'</b> + vowel/f + vowel + te	te

Note: some dialects use (a)ist for te in the conditional/past habitual.

### Examples:

**dhùineadh** an uinneag  
the window was closed,  
someone closed the window

**cha do dh'fhosgladh** an uinneag  
the window was not opened,  
no one opened the window

**seinnear an t-òran sin a h-uile bliadhna**  
that song will be sung every year,  
someone will sing that song every year

**an leughar e?**  
will it be read?,  
will someone read it?

**cheannaichte gu leòr salainn an uair ud**  
a lot of salt used to be bought at that time,  
people used to buy a lot of salt at that time

**an cante sin an da-riribh?**  
was that said seriously?,  
did people say that seriously?

Here is a list of the most commonly used impersonal forms of irregular verbs:

VERB	PAST		FUTURE		COND/PAST HAB	
	INDEP	DEP	INDEP	DEP	INDEP	DEP
abair	thuirteadh	duirteadh	theirear	deirear	theirte	deirte
beir	rugadh	do rugadh	beirear	beirear	bheirte	beirte
cluinn	chualas	cualas	cluinnear	cluinnear	chluiinne	cluinnte
dèan	rinneadh	do rinneadh	nithear	dèanar	dhèante	dèante
faic	chunncas	facas	chithear	faicear	chite	faicte
faigh	fhuaradh	d'fhuaradh	gheibhear	faighear	gheibhte	faighte
thoir	thugadh	dugadh	bheirear	doirear	bheirte	doirte

The impersonal forms of the verb **tha** are as follows:

PAST		PRESENT		FUTURE		COND/PAST HAB	
INDEP	DEP	INDEP	DEP	INDEP	DEP	INDEP	DEP
bhathar	robhar	thathar	(bh)eilear	bithear	bithear	bhite	bite
bhathas	robhas	thathas	(bh)eileas				

## 109 Another passive construction

The periphrastic (long) construction involving the verb **tha** and the preposition **aig** can be used passively. The formula is as follows:

THA + SUBJECT + (AG + POSS PRON, AGREEING IN NUMBER AND GENDER WITH THE SUBJECT) + VERBAL NOUN

Recall from Lesson 8, Section 72 that **ag** combines with the possessive pronouns as follows:

gam*	gar
gad*	gur
ga*	gan/gam
ga	

Here are some examples:

**Bha Gàidhlig 'ga bruidhinn air feadh Alba.**  
Gaelic was spoken all over Scotland.

**Tha leabhairchean gan reic anns a' bhùth sin.**

Books are being sold in that shop.

**Bhiodh an t-òran sin ga ghabhail gu math tric air an rèdio.**

That song used to be sung fairly often on the radio.

## Vocabulary

leag (vb)	/ʌeg/	knock down
caill (vb)	/kaiɪ/	lose
airgead (m)	/[ər'ɛ]gɛd/	money
lean (vb)	/lɛn/	follow
nigh (vb)	/ni/	wash
bho	/bɔ/, /vɔ/	since
marbh (vb)	/m[ara]v/	kill
feadh (+G)	/fjv/	(at some point) during

## Exercise 2

Translate the following using the impersonal forms of the verbs:

- 1 The song will be sung.
- 2 The window was opened.
- 3 The old house was pulled down/demolished.
- 4 Money is lost every year.
- 5 John was followed home yesterday.
- 6 It used to be washed every day.
- 7 The bird has not been seen or heard since last week.
- 8 It is said that he lived in Edinburgh when he was younger.
- 9 He was killed during the night.
- 10 I was born and brought up in Ireland.

## 110 Subjunctive

Scottish Gaelic does not have special subjunctive verbal forms which express desire or uncertainty. Normally the conditional form corresponds to the subjunctive in other languages.

**Rachainn a Ghlaschu nan digeadh Anna comhla rium.**

I would go to Glasgow if Ann came with me.

Subjunctive forms do survive, however, in higher registers of the language, particularly in the Bible, e.g.:

**Tog do shùil is gum faic thu a-nis am mùthadh mór.**  
Lift thine eye that thou may now see the great change.

**Gun dige do rioghachd.**  
May Thy kingdom come.

Special ‘wish’ forms once common also survive in some phrases. These ‘wish’ forms are preceded by **gun** and **guma** ‘(would) that’, ‘(wish) that’, ‘may’. Here are some examples:

**gun robh math agad**

*lit* ‘may you have good’, which is used in some south-western dialects for ‘thank you’ as in Irish Gaelic

**gun déid (gu math) leat!**

may it go (well) with you, good luck!

**guma math a théid leat!**

may it go well with you, good luck!

**guma fada beò thu is ceò as ur taigh**

long may you live and may there be smoke from your house!

## 111 Defective verbs

Defective verbs are verbs which do not appear in all tenses. We’ve already met some defective verbs, e.g.: **faod** ‘may’, **feum** ‘must’, is ‘be’. Here are some more:

**(a) Arsa** ‘says, said’

**Arsa** means ‘says’ or ‘said’ and is used in quotative speech. When pronouns are used with **arsa**, they appear in the emphatic form:

“Dé a tha a’ dol?” **arsa** Iain. “What’s doing?” says/said John.  
“Ciamar a tha sibh?” **arsa** esan. “How are you?” says/said he.

**(b) Theab** ‘almost’

**Theab** is used in the past tense. It is always followed by an infinitive noun:

**Theab mi tuiteam.**

I almost fell.

**Theab i a dhol ás a ciall.**

She almost went out of her mind.

**(c) Dh’fhidir** ‘know’

**Dh’fhidir** is used in the past tense and present/future.

**Dh’fhidir mi.**

I know, I have heard.

**Ma dh’fhidireas mi.**

If I know

**Fidiridh an cù sin.**

The dog will sense that.

**(d) Trobhad** ‘come along’; **thugainn** ‘let’s go’; **siubhad** ‘go on, continue’

**Trobhad**, **thugainn** (with dialect variants) and **siubhad** are only used in the imperative (singular and plural):

**Trobhad a Sheumais!**

Come along, James!

**Trobhadaibh an-seo!**

Come here!

**Thugainn a Mhàiri!**

Let’s go, Mary!

**Thugnaibh a ghilean!**

Let’s go, boys!

**Siubhad a Dhomhnaill!**

Go on, Donald!

**Siubhdaibh a nigheanan!**

Continue, girls!

## 112 Interjections

Here is a list of some commonly used interjections:

**a chiall!** /ə çjæl/

Oh dear!

**a thiarna!** /ə hiərnə(ə)/

Oh lord!

**a dhiamh!** /ə jiā/

yuck!

**a dhuine!** /ə yuŋə/

dear man!

**a thiarcais fhéin!** /ə hiərkis̄ he:n/

goodness me!

**mo chreach!** /mə xreχ/

alas!

**obh obh!** /o vo-əv/

dear me!

**(dé) b'aill leibh!** /(d'e:) ba:ɿ lu/

excuse me! (I didn’t hear)

### Remaining prepositional pronouns

<i>gu 'to'</i>	<i>bho 'from'</i>	<i>fo 'under'</i>	<i>á 'out of'</i>
thugam	bhuam	fodham	asam
thugad	bhuat	fodhad	asad
thuige	bhuaidhe	fodha	as
thuice	bhuaipe	foidhpe	aiste
thugainn	bhuainn	fodhainn	asainn
thugaibh	bhuuibh	fodhaibh	asaibh
thuca	bhuapa	fodhpá	asta
<i>de 'of'</i>	<i>no 'before'</i>	<i>tro 'through'</i>	<i>mu 'about'</i>
dhiom	romham	tromham	umam
dhiot	romhad	tromhad	umad
dhe	roimhe	troimhe	uime
dhi	roimpe	troimpe	uimpe
dhinn	romhainn	tromhainn	umainn
dhibh	romhaibh	tromhaibh	umaibh
dhiubh	rompa	trompa	umpa

### Vocabulary

<b>ceasnaiche (m)</b>	/k̪ɛsniç/	interviewer
<b>faile air</b>	/fa:l̪i:t̪ə er/	welcome to
<b>bàrd (m)</b>	/ba:sd/	poet
<b>ainmeil</b>	/[ene]mel/	famous
<b>Ratharsair</b>	/ra-ɔ:sər/	Isle of Raasay
<b>tir-mór (m)</b>	/t̪i:r̪ i mo:r/	mainland
<b>fad an t-siubhail</b>	/fad ən t̪u:b̪al/	all the time
<b>foghlam (m)</b>	/fvi:ʃəm/	education
<b>gun teagamh</b>	/gən t̪egu:/	without a doubt, of course
<b>Port Righ</b>	/pɔ:sd̪ si:/	Portree
<b>cuspair (m)</b>	/ku:sber/	subject
<b>builich (vb)</b>	/buliç/	grant, bestow, confer
<b>ceum (m)</b>	/k̪e:m/	degree
<b>dreuchd (f)</b>	/driaxg/	post, job
<b>teagaisg (m)</b>	/t̪egəsg/	teaching
<b>àrd-sgoil (f)</b>	/a:rsd̪ sgɔ:l/	secondary school
<b>taghadh (vn)</b>	/t̪x-ɔ:y/	electing, choosing
<b>thoir air (vb)</b>	/hɔ:r̪ i er/	cause
<b>bàrdachd (f)</b>	/ba:sd̪axg/	poetry
<b>fhathast</b>	/ha-ɔ:sd̪/	still
<b>adhbhár (m)</b>	/v̪:vər/	reason
<b>céilidh (vn)</b>	/k̪e:li/	visiting
<b>gu h-àraid</b>	/gə ha:sed/	especially
<b>miosail air</b>	/misal er/	fond of
<b>sin as coireach</b>	/ʃin əs kvi:ç/	that (which) is the reason

<b>litreachas (m)</b>	/l̪i:t̪r̪eçəs/	literature
<b>ùr-nodha</b>	/u:r̪ nɔ:d̪ə/	brand new
<b>foillsich (vb)</b>	/fvi:ʎiç/	publish
<b>comharradh (m)</b>	/k̪oh̪ar̪əd̪/	sign
<b>feadhain (f)</b>	/fjo:-ip/	some
<b>ginealach (m)</b>	/g̪i:nəʎəç/	generation
<b>seadh</b>	/ʃv̪y/	yes, indeed
<b>am bheil thu an dùil?</b>	/ə vəl u ən̪ d̪u:l/	do you think (so)?

### COMHRADH

#### Bàrd ainmeil a' bruidhinn air prògram ràdio

**Ceasnaiche** Fàilte oirbh do phrògram na seachdain seo. Tha am bàrd ainmeil Niall MacLeod a-staigh comhla ri um an-diugh. Feasgar math dhuibh a Nèill. Ciamar a tha sibh?

**Niall** Tha gu dòigheil. Tha mi fior thoilichte a bhith an-seo 'nur cuideachd feasgar an-diugh.

**Ceasnaiche** A-nis, innisibh beagan dhuinn mu ur deidhinn fhéin an toiseach. Càite an do rugadh sibh?

**Niall** Rugadh is thogadh mi ann an Ratharsair. Àite brèagha. Tha mi a-nis a' fuireach air tìr-mór ged-ta. Bha m'athair ri iasgach. Bha e air a chumail a' dol. Bhiodh e aig muir fad an t-siubhail. Dh'fheumadh e sin a chionn bha teaghlaich mór aige. Bha ceathrar bhràithrean agam agus triùir pheathraighean.

**Ceasnaiche** Càite an d'fhuair sibh ur foghlam?

**Niall** Fhuair an toiseach ann an Ratharsair gun teagamh agus an deidh sin ann am Port Righ. Nuair a dh'fhàg mi an sgoil, chaidh mi dhan an oilthigh an Dùn Éideann. Chuir mi seachad ceithir bliadhna an-sin. Se Gàidhlig agus Beurla a rinn mi ann. Chòrd an dà chuspair sin rium glan – le chéile. Bhuilicheadh ceum MA orm ann an naoi deug trì fichead is a dhà.

**Ceasnaiche** Dé a rinn sibh an deidh dhuibh a bhith anns an oilthigh?

**Niall** Chuir mi a-staigh airson dreuchd teagaisg ann an àrd-sgoil is chaidh mo thaghadh airson na h-obrach. Bha mi a' teagaisg an dà chuid Gàidhlig is Beurla is beagan Fraingeis cuideachd.

**Ceasnaiche** Dé a thug oirbhòis achadh air sgrìobhadh agus cuine a thòisich sibh air sgrìobhadh?

- Niall* B'abhaist dhomh a bhith a' sgrìobhadh tric nuair a bha mi òg. Tha cuimhne agam gun do sgrìobh mi pìos bàrdachd nuair a bha mi sia bliadhna a dh'aois. Tha e agam fhathast.
- Ceasnaiche* An ann anns a' Ghàidhlig as mothà a bha sibh a' sgrìobhadh?
- Niall* Sann, sann anns a' Ghàidhlig a bha mi a' sgrìobhadh mar bu trice. Cha b'urrainn dhomh an aon rud a dhèanamh anns a' Bheurla airson adhbhar air choireigin, tha fhios agaibh. Nuair a bha mi òg, bhinn a' cluinnntinn tòrr òrain bho na seann daoine a thigeadh a-steach a chéilidh oirnn. Bhinn gan ionnsachadh. Tha mi cinnteach gun robh sin 'na chuid eachadh mór dhomh mar bhàrd. Ghabhte òrain is dh'innste sgeulachdan a h-uile h-oidhche anns an taigh againne, gu h-àraig anns a' gheamhradh. Bha fior dheagh bhàrdachd anns na h-òrain sin is anns na sgeulachdan cuideachd. Bha mi eagalach miosail air na h-òrain. Is dòcha gur h-e sin as coireach gur h-e Gàidhlig a thagh mi seach Beurla nuair a thòisich mi air sgrìobhadh an toiseach.
- Ceasnaiche* Dé ur beachd air na thathar a' sgrìobhadh anns a' Ghàidhlig an-diugh?
- Niall* Deagh bheachd air a' chuid as mothà dhe, feumaidh mi a ràdh. Feumar a ràdh ged-ta gum bheil cuid dhen an litreachas ùr-nodha nas fheàrr na chéile. Foillsichear móran leabhairchean Gàidhlig a h-uile bliadhna seach mar a b'abhaist. Se comharradh math a tha sin. Tha feadhain dhen a' ghinealach òg air leth math.
- Ceasnaiche* O, seadh, am bheil sibh an dùil? Tha mi duilich ach chan eil an còrr ùine againn. Tha an ùine air ruith agus feumaidh sinn a fhàgail mar sin an-dràsta chun na seachdain seo a' tighinn. Sin agaibh e. Tapadh leibh a Nèill airson tighinn a-steach a bhruidhinn ruinn. Tha sinn fada 'nur comain. Beannachd leibh.
- Niall* Mar sin leibh.

## TRANSLATION

## A famous poet speaking on a radio programme

- Interviewer* Welcome to this week's programme. The famous poet Neil Macleod is here with me today. Good evening Neil. How are you?
- Neil* Fine. I am very happy to be here in your company this evening.
- Interviewer* Now, tell us a bit about yourself first. Where were you born?
- Neil* I was born and brought up in Raasay. A beautiful place. I now live on the mainland however. My father was at the fishing. He was kept going (i.e. busy). He used to be at sea all the time. He had to be because he had a big family. I had four brothers and three sisters.
- Interviewer* Where were you educated?
- Neil* In Raasay at first of course and after that in Portree. When I left school, I went to the university in Edinburgh. I spent four years there. It was Gaelic and English that I did there. I enjoyed those two subjects a lot – both of them. I was granted an MA degree in the year nineteen sixty two.
- Interviewer* What did you do after being in the university?
- Neil* I applied for a teaching post in a secondary school and I was chosen for the work. I was teaching both Gaelic and English and a bit of French too.
- Interviewer* What caused you to begin writing and when did you start to write?
- Neil* I used to write often when I was young. I remember that I wrote a piece of poetry when I was six years of age. I still have it.
- Interviewer* Was it in Gaelic that you wrote mostly?
- Neil* Yes, it was in Gaelic that I most often wrote. I couldn't do the same thing in English for some reason or other, you know. When I was young, I used to hear lots of songs from the old people that would come in to visit us. I used to learn them. I am certain that that was a great help to me as a poet. Songs were sung and stories were told every night in our house, especially in the winter. There was really good poetry in those songs and in the stories too. I was terribly fond of the

songs. I suppose that is the reason that it was Gaelic rather than English that I chose when I started writing at first.

**Interviewer** What is your opinion of what is being written in Gaelic nowadays?

**Neil** A good opinion of most of it, I must say. It must be said however that some of the modern literature is better than the rest. Many Gaelic books are published every year compared to the way it used to be. That's a good sign. Some of the young generation are exceptionally good.

**Interviewer** Oh, indeed, do you think so? I am sorry but we have no more time. The time has run out and we must leave it like that until next week. That's it. Thank you Neil for coming in to speak to us. We are very indebted to you. Goodbye.

**Neil** Goodbye.

Oh, indeed, do you think so? I am sorry but we have no more time. The time has run out and we must leave it like that until next week. That's it. Thank you Neil for coming in to speak to us. We are very indebted to you. Goodbye.

Oh, indeed, do you think so? I am sorry but we have no more time. The time has run out and we must leave it like that until next week. That's it. Thank you Neil for coming in to speak to us. We are very indebted to you. Goodbye.

## Appendix 1

### Vowel changes with slenderisation

The following vowels are affected by slenderisation as follows:

Vowel	Vowel + i	Examples	Examples with slenderisation
ea	ei i	each, caileag fear, cailleach	eich, caileig fir, cailllich
ia	éi, èi	fiadh, Niall	féidh, Néill
eo	iùi	ceòl	ciùil
eu	éi èi	geug beul	géig beòil
io	i	fionn	finn
io	i	siol	síl
o	ui	cnoc	cnuic
ò	ùi	bòrd	bùird

The following vowels may or may not change form with slenderisation. There are no hard and fast rules to tell us if a particular word will change form or not; the vowel changes must be learnt for each noun in question:

<i>Vowel</i>	<i>Vowel + i</i>	<i>Examples</i>	<i>Examples with slenderisation</i>
a	ai	cat	cait
	oi	cas	cois
	ui	falt	fuilt
	i	mac	mic
ð	ði	sròn	sròin
	ùi	bòrd	bùird

## Appendix 2

### Prepositions and prepositional pronouns

<i>aig 'at'</i>	<i>air 'on'</i>	<i>do 'to, for'</i>	<i>gu 'to'</i>
agam	orm	dhomh	thugam
agad	ort	dhut	thugad
aige	air	dha	thuige
aice	oirre	dhi	thuice
againn	oirnn	dhuinn	thugainn
agaibh	oirbh	dhuibh	thugaibh
aca	orra	dhaibh	thuca
<i>bho 'from'</i>	<i>fo 'under'</i>	<i>le 'with'</i>	<i>ri 'with, to'</i>
bhuam	fodham	leam	rium
bhuat	fodhad	leat	riut
bhuaidhe	fodha	leis	ris
bhuaipe	foidhpe	leatha	rithe
bhuainn	fodhainn	leinn	ruinn
bhuaiibh	fodhaibh	leibh	ruibh
bhuapa	fodhpa	leotha	riutha
<i>de 'of'</i>	<i>ro 'before'</i>	<i>tro 'through'</i>	<i>ann an 'in'</i>
dhiom	romham	tromham	annam
dhiot	romhad	tromhad	annad
dhe	roimhe	troimhe	ann
dhi	roimpe	troimpe	innte
dhinn	romhainn	tromhainn	annainn
dhibh	romhaibh	tromhaibh	annaibh
dhiubh	rompa	trompa	annta
<i>mu 'about'</i>	<i>á 'out of'</i>		
umam	asam		
umad	asad		
uime	ás		
uimpe	aiste		
umainn	asainn		
umaibh	asaibh		
umpa	asta		

## Appendix 3

### Forms of the article

The article may be grouped into four main varieties: **an**, **an\***, **na**, **nam**. These are as follows:

ARTICLE	FORMS	ENVIRONMENT	FUNCTION
<b>an</b>	<b>am</b> <b>an t-</b> <b>an</b>	before labials <b>b p f m</b> before vowels otherwise	nom. sing. masculine
<b>an*</b>	<b>a**</b> <b>an t-</b> <b>an</b> <b>an*</b>	before lenitable consonants except <b>d t s f</b> before <b>s sl sn sr</b> before <b>d t</b> before <b>f</b>	nom. sing. feminine prepositional sing. genitive sing. masculine
<b>na</b>	<b>na h-</b> <b>na</b>	before vowels otherwise	genitive sing. feminine nominative plural
<b>nam</b>	<b>nam</b> <b>nan</b>	before labials <b>b p f m</b> otherwise	genitive plural

Recall that \* indicates that a form lenites.

## Appendix 4

### Nasalisation

Forms of the article ending in **-n-m** can affect the pronunciation of the following consonants: **c t p g d b** to varying degrees in Gaelic dialects. There are two main varieties:

Gaelic orthography	TYPE A	TYPE B
<b>an càr</b>	<b>a(n) gàr</b> [ə(ŋ) g(h)a:ṛ]	<b>ang hàr</b> [əŋ ha:ṛ]
<b>an taigh</b>	<b>a(n) daigh</b> [ə(ŋ) d(h)vɪ]	<b>an haigh</b> [əŋ hvɪ]
<b>am pinnt</b>	<b>a(m) binnt</b> [ə(m) b(h)i:nd̪]	<b>am hinnt</b> [əm hi:nd̪]
<b>an gobha</b>	<b>a(n) gobha</b> [ə(ŋ) go-ə]	<b>a ngobha</b> [ə ngo-ə]
<b>an duine</b>	<b>a(n) duine</b> [ə(ŋ) duɪə]	<b>a nuine</b> [ə ŋuɪə]
<b>am baile</b>	<b>a(m) bainne</b> [ə(m) baɪnə]	<b>a mainne</b> [ə maɪnə]

Both types are localised pronunciations, 'A' belonging, broadly speaking, to most dialects and 'B' to a number of dialects of the north west, e.g. Lewis and parts of Skye.

## Appendix 5

Example of the regular verb **mol** 'praise'

### PRESENT

<b>tha mi a' moladh</b>	I am praising, I praise
<b>tha thu a' moladh</b>	you are praising, you praise
<b>tha e/i a' moladh</b>	he/she is praising, he/she praises
<b>tha sinn a' moladh</b>	we are praising, we praise
<b>tha sibh a' moladh</b>	you are praising, you praise
<b>tha iad a' moladh</b>	they are praising, they praise

### PAST

#### Independent

<b>mhol mi</b>	I praised
<b>mhol thu</b>	you praised
<b>mhol e/i</b>	he/she praised
<b>mhol sinn</b>	we praised
<b>mhol sibh</b>	you praised
<b>mhol iad</b>	they praised

#### Dependent

<b>cha do mhol mi</b>	I did not praise
<b>cha do mhol thu</b>	you did not praise
<b>cha do mhol e/i</b>	he/she did not praise
<b>cha do mhol sinn</b>	we did not praise
<b>cha do mhol sibh</b>	you did not praise
<b>cha do mhol iad</b>	they did not praise

### FUTURE

#### Independent (i)

<b>molaidh mi</b>	I will praise
<b>molaidh tu</b>	you will praise
<b>molaidh e/i</b>	he/she will praise
<b>molaidh sinn</b>	we will praise
<b>molaidh sibh</b>	you will praise
<b>molaidh iad</b>	they will praise

#### Dependent

<b>nach mol mi?</b>	will I not praise?
<b>nach mol thu?</b>	will you not praise?
<b>nach mol e/i?</b>	will he/she not praise?
<b>nach mol sinn?</b>	will we not praise?
<b>nach mol sibh?</b>	will you not praise?
<b>nach mol iad?</b>	will they not praise?

### CONDITIONAL/PAST HABITUAL

#### Independent

<b>mholainn</b>	I would praise, I used to praise
<b>mholadh tu</b>	you would praise, you used to praise
<b>mholadh e/i</b>	he/she would praise, he/she used to praise
<b>mholamaid</b>	we would praise, we used to praise
<b>(mholadh sinn)</b>	
<b>mholadh sibh</b>	you would praise, you used to praise
<b>mholadh iad</b>	they would praise, they used to praise

#### Dependent

The dependent forms are the same as the independent forms without the lenition.

### IMPERATIVE

<b>mol</b>	praise
<b>moladh e/i</b>	let him/her praise
<b>molamaid</b>	let us praise
<b>molaibh</b>	praise
<b>moladh iad</b>	let them praise

To negate the imperative, the above forms are preceded by **na**.

## Reading Practice

### Iolaire Loch Tréig

Uair dha robh an saoghal, bha iolaire anns na beanntan a-muigh taobh Loch Tréig. Bha i a' fuireach ann an coire an-sin ris an can iad An Coire Meadhain. A' bhliadhna seo thàinig geamhradh fuar agus móran sneachda, le cur is cathadh. Oidhche dhe na h-oidhcheannan bha an iolaire a' faireachdann an fhuachd. 'Cha do dh'fhaich mi a leithid de dh'fhuachd riamh', thuirt i rithe fhéin. 'Saoil', thuirt i, 'an robh oidhche na b'fhuaire na seo riamh ann?'

Bha dreathann donn a' fuireach faisg oirre is chaidh i far an robh an dreathann. 'An do dh'fhaich thu oidhche na b'fhuaire na seo riamh?' thuirt i ris. 'Cha do dh'fhaich', ars an dreathann donn, 'ach dh'fhaodadh e a bhith gun robh a leithid ann. Chan eil fhios agamsa. Ach tha gobhar dhubb ann am Bun Ruaidh is tha i fada nas sine na mise. Bidh fhios aiceise.'

Chaidh an iolaire chun na goibhre is chuir i an dearbh cheist oirre. 'Cha do dh'fhaich', thuirt a' ghobhar, 'ach tha damh féidh', ars ise, 'ann an Coille Innse a tha fada nas sine na mise agus bidh fhios aigesan.' Ràinig an iolaire Coille Innse is lorg i an damh féidh ann an coire fasgach. Se an aon fhreagairt a fhuair i an-sin. 'Thàinig mi', arsa esan, 'an-seo á Inbhir Làire is mi 'nam dhamh òg is cha do dh'fhaich mi oidhche na b'fhuaire. Ach tha breac ann an Lochan na Làrig a tha fada nas sine na mise. Bidh fhios aigesan.'

Chaidh an iolaire chun a' bhric. 'An do dh'fhaich thu oidhche riamh na b'fhuaire na seo?' thuirt i.

'O dh'fhaich', thuirt am breac, 'fada fada na b'fhuaire. Bha mise anns an loch seo an oidhche a bha ann is bha an oidhche cho fuar is gun do chaill mi mo fhradharc leis an fhuachd. Bha an oidhche sin fada na b'fhuaire na an oidhche a-nochd.'

Bha an iolaire toilichte sin a chluinntinn is thill i dhachaigh.

### The Eagle of Loch Treig

Once upon a time there was an Eagle in the mountains out by Loch Treig. She lived in a corry there that they call (the) Middle Corry. One year there came a cold winter and a lot of snow, with fall and drift (blizzard). One particular night the Eagle was feeling the cold. 'I've never known such cold', she said to herself. 'I wonder if there was ever a colder night than this.' There was a Wren living near the Eagle and the Eagle went to the Wren. 'Have you ever known a colder night than this?' she asked. 'No. I haven't', said the Wren, 'but such there might have been. I do not know. But there's a Black Goat in Bun Roy and she's far older than me. She'll know.'

The Eagle went to the Goat and put the very same question to her. 'No, I haven't', said the Goat, 'but there's a Stag in the Wood of Inch who is far older than me and he'll know.' The Eagle reached the Wood of Inch and found the Stag in a sheltered corry. She got the same answer there. 'I came here from Inverlair', said he, 'when I was a young stag and I have not known a colder night. But there is a Salmon in Lochan na Lairig who is far older than me. He'll know.'

The Eagle went to the Salmon. 'Have you ever known a colder night than this?' she asked. 'Oh yes', said the Salmon, 'a far, far colder night. I was in this loch that night and the night was so cold that I lost my sight with the cold. That night was far colder than this night tonight.' The Eagle was glad to hear that and returned home.

## Alasdair Mac Mhaighstir Alasdair agus Donnchadh Bàn Mac an t-Saoir

Rinn Donnchadh Bàn òran dhan an té a phòs e, Màiri Bhàn Òg: ‘A Mhàiri Bhàn Òg is tu an òigh a tha air m’aire’. Bhathas a’ ràdh gun robh seòrsa de dh’fhamrad aig Mac Mhaighstir Alasdair ri Donnchadh Bàn. Se duine foghlaimte a bha ann an Alasdair. Cha robh sgoil aig Donnchadh ann. Ach bha Donnchadh chomh miosail aig an t-sluagh fada is farsaing air feadh na Gàidhealdachd, mar dhuine agus mar bhàrd, agus bha fios aig Alasdair gur h-ann mar sin a bha.

An deidh do Dhonnchadh Bàn agus Màiri Bhàn Òg pòsadh, thuirt Mac Mhaighstir Alasdair latha ri Donnchadh: ‘Tha mi nis air Màiri fhaicinn agus chan eil i idir cho brèagha is a thuirt thusa a bha i anns an òran’. ‘O ged-ta chan fhaca tusa i le mo shùilean-sa’, arsa Donnchadh Bàn.

### Alasdair Mac Mhaighstir Alasdair (c 1695–1770) and Donnchadh Bàn Mac an t-Saoir (c 1724–1812): two famous poets.

Duncan Bàn (fair-haired) made a song to the girl he married, Màiri Bhàn Òg (Young fair-haired Mary): ‘Màiri Bhàn Òg, you are the maiden in my thoughts’. It was said that Alasdair mac Mhaighstir Alasdair was kind of jealous of Duncan Bàn. Alasdair was an educated man. Duncan had no schooling. But Duncan was so popular with people in general, far and wide throughout the Gaidhealdachd as a poet and as a man, and Alasdair knew that that was so.

After Duncan Bàn and Màiri Bhàn Òg married, mac Mhaighstir Alasdair said to Duncan one day: ‘I’ve now seen Màiri and she isn’t at all as beautiful as you said she was in the song.’ ‘Ah, but you didn’t see her with my eyes’, said Duncan Bàn.

Fada na b’fhasaire an òran eadhach a nochd.

Hila an reidhet seilichte sin a chluasannta is thar i dhruachadh.

## Donnchadh Bàn agus ‘Moladh Beinn Dobhrain’

Bhathar ag innse gun robh Donnchadh Bàn Mac an t-Saoir, am bàrd, ag òl comhla ri cuideachd an latha a bha seo ann an taigh-seinnse Chill Fhinn. Có a thachair a bhith an làthair ach Domhnall mac Raghnaill na Sgéithe, Domhnallach á Gleann Comhann. Se bàrd a bha annsan e fhéin.

Bha an dìthis bhàrd a’ comhdach mu mhaise nam beanntan, gach fear aca a’ moladh na dùthcha aige fhéin. Sann a thuirt duine a bha anns an éisteachd: ‘Se bàird a tha annaibh le chéile. Carson nach dèan sibh òran am fear mu na beanntan is na sléibhteán sin agus thig sinn cruinn an-seo a-rithist an ceann mìos. Am fear a tha a’ chuideachd seo a’ meas a rinn an t-òran as fheàrr, faodaidh e a bhith ag òl an asgaidh fad na h-oidhche.’

Sin mar a bha. Bha òran aig Domhnall mac Raghnaill mu bheanntan Ghlinne Comhann. Ach se an t-òran a bha aig Donnchadh Bàn ‘Moladh Beinn Dobhrain’.

### Duncan Bàn and ‘The Praise of Ben Doran’

They used to tell that Duncan Bàn Macintyre the poet was drinking along with a group of companions one day in the tavern of Killin. Who happened to be present but Donald son of Ranald of the Shield, a MacDonald from Glencoe. He was a poet himself. The two poets were arguing about the beauty of the mountains, each of them praising his own district. Then a man who was there listening said: ‘You are poets both of you. Why doesn’t each of you make a song about those moors and mountains and we’ll meet here again in a month’s time. The one whom the company here reckons made the better song, he can drink free all night.’

That’s how it was. Donald son of Ranald had a song about the mountains of Glencoe. But the song that Duncan had was ‘The Praise of Ben Doran’.

## Foghlam anns a' Ghàidhlig

Tha cursa an Foghlaim Ghàidhealaich annasach anns an dà sheagh: tha e a' dùsgadh ùidh agus tha e 'na adhbhar iongantais. Nuair a sheallar air na chaidh a sgrìobhadh ann an Gàidhlig, shaoileadh duine gun deach òigradh na Gàidhealdachd a oideachadh 'nan cànan fhéin ann an sgoiltean an stàit bho shean. Ach cha b'ann mar sin a bha. Bha sgoiltean paraiste thall is a-bhos air feadh na Gàidhealdachd fad ghinealach ach cha robhar a' teagasc Gàidhlig annnta ann. Se sgoiltean de ghnè eile a chum taic ri leughadh is sgrìobhadh agus tha ceangaltais ri a lorg a thaobh littearrachd bho linn Chalaim Chille an Eilean Idhe, anns an t-siathamh ceud, a dh'ionnsaigh an latha an-diugh.

Anns na linnteann Meadhanach bha sgoiltean nam filidh (is dòcha caochladh sheòrsaichean diubh an àiteachan fa-leth) a' toirt foghlaim ann an Gàidhlig do na sgrìobhadairean agus do theaghlaichean nan uaislean. Mhair a bheag no a mhór dhe a shusbaint gu ruige an t-ochdamh ceud deug. Ach na bu tràithe na sin a-rithist bhathas air modh-litreachaidh na Gàidhlig a leasachadh agus a chur an sàs ann a bhith a' sgrìobhadh cainnt chumanta an t-sluagh. Rinneadh tomhas dhen obair sin fo sgéith Seanadh Arra Ghàidheal anns an Eaglais Stéite.

Ann an 1709 chaidh Comann a stéidheachadh ann an Dùn Éideann, le barrantas rioghail, airson sgoiltean a chur air bhonn gus leughadh is sgrìobhadh a ionnsachadh do mhuinntir na Gàidhlig an Alba agus gu sonraichte airson am Bioball agus leabhrachaean cràbhach a chur an èolas nan Gàidheal. B'e sin an SSPCK (Scottish Society for the Propagation of Christian Knowledge). Aig toiseach töiseachaidh b'e rùn a' Chomainn foghlam Beurla a thoirt don t-sluagh Ghàidhealach: bha Gàidhlig is Laideann le chéile, uime sin, air an toirmseag anns na sgoiltean. Ach cha deach leotha. Se buil a bha ann gun dàinig an Comann seo gu bhith 'na chùl-taic don chànan, a' misneachadh agus a' cuideachadh an dà chuid teagasc agus clòbhualadh leabhrachaean Gàidhlig.

Bha comainn eile a chuireadh air bhonn gus taic a thoirt do Sgoiltean Gàidhlig. Cha robh ach aon cheann-uidhe anns an amharc aca: fiosrachadh sgrìobtaireil a chraobh sgaoileadh. Nuair a thàinig an Dealachadh (1843) agus a dh'fhàg móran dhen t-sluagh an Eaglais Stéite, chuir an Eaglais Shaor a cuid sgoiltean fhéin air chois. A thuilleadh orra sin, bha caochladh chomhlan eile ann, car

dhen aon seòrsa, a chuir ris an obair chèanta. Ma tha laigead ri a chur as leth ordachadh an foghlaim sin air fad, se gun robh e ro cheangailte ri riaghladh eaglaiseach. Ach a dh'ainneoin sin thug na sgoiltean littearrachd do ghinealaichean dhe na Gàidheil.

Nuair a thugadh a-mach Achd an Foghlaim leis an Stàit, ann an 1872, cha robh àite no cothrom air a thoirt dhan Ghàidhlig. A chionn is gum feumadh a h-uile leanabh a-nis dol dhan sgoil, agus leis gur h-e Beurla an aon chainnt ionnsachaidh a bha innte, thug an t-Achd buille mhairbhreach dhan chànan. Ann an 1918 thàinig achd a thug inbhe air choireigin dhan Ghàidhlig: chuireadh mar fhiachaibh air ughdarras an foghlaim anns gach sgìreacd Ghàidhealaich ullachadh freagarrach a dhèanamh as leth an teagaisg. Ann an 1946 chaidh Gàidhlig a chur air a' chlàr-oideachaidh ann am beagan sgoiltean anns na bailtean móra, Glaschu gu h-àraig, airson a' cheud uair. Ann an 1949 stéidhich Siorrachd Inbhir Nis post fear-eagraidh Gàidhlig ann an sgeama dà-chànanach. Bhon uair sin thàinig leasachaidhean eile ann an Roinn na Gàidhealdachd agus ann an Roinn nan Eilean. Tha toradh na h-obrach sin fhathast ri a mheas.

## Education in Gaelic

The course of Gaelic education is remarkable in two senses: it arouses interest and astonishment. When one considers how much has been written in Gaelic, one would think that the youth of the Gaidhealtachd had been instructed in their own language in the schools of the state from olden times. But that was not the case. There were parish schools here and there throughout the Gaidhealtachd for generations but Gaelic was simply not taught in them. It was schools of another kind that maintained reading and writing and a continuity of literacy can be traced from the time of Columba in Iona, in the sixth century, to the present day.

In the Middle Ages the poets' schools (diverse kinds perhaps in different places) gave instruction in Gaelic to writers and the families of the aristocracy. The substance of that, to a lesser or greater degree, survived until the eighteenth century. But earlier than that again the orthography of Gaelic had been developed and

used in writing to represent the common speech of the people. A certain amount of that work was done under the aegis of the Synod of Argyll in the Established Church.

In 1709 a Society was set up in Edinburgh, under royal charter, to establish schools in order to teach reading and writing to the Gaelic speakers in Scotland and particularly to give Gaels a knowledge of the Bible and books of piety. This was the SSPCK (Scottish Society for the Propagation of Christian Knowledge). At the outset the aim of the Society was to provide education in English to the Gaelic population. Gaelic and Latin together were therefore forbidden in the schools. But they did not succeed in that policy. The result was that this Society came to be a support for the language, encouraging and helping both teaching and publishing Gaelic books.

Other societies were set up to support Gaelic schools. These had the sole aim of disseminating knowledge of the Scriptures. When the Disruption came (1843) and many of the people left the Established Church, the Free Church set up its own schools. In addition to these, there were a variety of other bodies, more or less of the same kind, who supplemented the same work. If there is any weakness to be found in this educational set-up, it is the fact that it was too closely tied to ecclesiastical control. But despite that, the schools made generations of Gaels literate.

When the Education Act of 1872 was passed, no place or opportunity was given to Gaelic. Since every child had now to go to school, and since English was the only language of instruction, the Act gave Gaelic a fatal blow. In 1918, a new act came which gave some status to Gaelic: the educational authority in every Gaelic-speaking district was obliged to make adequate provision for the teaching of Gaelic. In 1946 Gaelic was placed on the curriculum of a few city schools, especially in Glasgow, for the first time. In 1949 Inverness-shire established the post of Gaelic organiser in a scheme for bilingualism. Since then other developments have come in the Highland Region and in the Western Isles. The effects of this work have still to be assessed.

## Key to Exercises

### LESSON 1

**Exercise 1:** 1 Tha Màiri toilichte. 2 Tha Iain làidir. 3 Tha mi blàth. 4 Tha iad fuar. 5 Tha sinn an-seo. 6 Tha leabhar aig Anna. 7 Tha càr aig Seumas. 8 Tha deoch agam. 9 Tha taigh againn. 10 Tha balach aice.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Chan eil Anna sgith. 2 Chan eil Seumas an-sin. 3 Chan eil cù aig Màiri. 4 Chan eil airgead againn. 5 Am bheil Iain fuar? 6 Am bheil deoch aig Domhnall? 7 Am bheil airgead aca? 8 Chan eil agam ach sgillinn. 9 Nach eil Domhnall toilichte? 10 Nach eil càr aige?

### LESSON 2

**Exercise 1:** 1 Is mise Anna. 2 Is esan Calum. 3 Is ise Peigi. 4 Cha tua Seumas. 5 Chan iadsan an clas Gàidhlig. 6 Chan ise Màiri. 7 Nach tua Domhnall? Cha mhi. 8 An tua Iain? Is mi. 9 Is iadsan Peigi agus Màiri. 10 Is tua an tidsear.

**Exercise 2:** 1 an leabhar. 2 an ceòl. 3 a' chraobh. 4 a' phìob. 5 a' bhean. 6 an fheannag. 7 an t-sràid. 8 an sporan. 9 am pàipear. 10 an té.

**Exercise 3:** 1 mo phiuthar. 2 do mhàthair. 3 a h-athair. 4 am mac. 5 a chas. 6 ar cù; an cù againn. 7 am moncaidh; am moncaidh aca. 8 do bhó; a' bhó agad. 9 a h-obair; an obair aice. 10 a sùil.

**Exercise 4:** 1 bòrd beag. 2 bó mhór. 3 balach math. 4 oidhche dhorchá. 5 bròg shalach. 6 bàta dearg. 7 seann bhàta. 8 deagh chaileag/caileag mhath. 9 droch shìde. 10 seann chàr gorm.

**Translation:** 1 a small table. 2 a big cow. 3 a good boy. 4 a dark night. 5 a dirty shoe. 6 a red boat. 7 an old boat. 8 a good girl. 9 bad weather. 10 an old blue car.

### LESSON 3

**Exercise 1:** 1 Dé a tha thu a' smaoineachadh? 2 Tha Anna a' fuireach an Dùn Éideann. 3 Am bheil thu a' tuigsinn Fraingeis. 4 Tha Iain a' sgrìobhadh bàrdachd. 5 Tha Màiri a' dèanamh rannsachadh. 6 Am bheil thu a' tighinn a-mach? 7 Tha iad ag iarraidh cupa cofaichd. 8 Tha Seumas ag obair an Glaschu. 9 Am bheil thu a' faireachdainn ceart gu leòr? 10 Chan eil mi a' tuigsinn.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Se mise Iain. 2 Se ise Anna. 3 An e esan an tidsear? Se. 4 Chan e Seumas an tidsear agam/mo thidsear. 5 Se Màiri an nurs. 6 Se Domhnall a h-athair. 7 Nach e Uilleam do mhac? Chan e. 8 Se Catriona a' phiuthar mhór. 9 Se thusa Seòras beag. 10 Se Màiri am ministear ùr aca/am ministear ùr.

**Exercise 3:** 1 a' chaileag seo. 2 a' bhùth sin. 3 am baile ud. 4 am boireannach sin an-sin. 5 (se) seo mo phiuthar. 6 (se) sin an sgian. 7 tha an t-aran an-siud. 8 (se) sin a' bheinn ud a-rithist. 9 tha seo fuar. 10 tha sin glé mhath.

**Exercise 4:** 1 a naoi. 2 a cóig. 3 a sia. 4 a h-ochd deug. 5 a seachd. 6 a naoi deug. 7 a h-aon. 8 a cóig deug.

#### LESSON 4

**Exercise 1:** An robh mi aig an taigh Di-Luain? An cuala mi fuaim shuas an staighre? An deach mi suas? Am faca mi meàirleach? An do rinn e bùrach? An duirt mi: 'Có thusa?'? An dàinig am Poileas agus an do rug iad air a' mheàirleach? An d'fhuair am meàirleach buille? An dug e an t-airgead air ais? An do ràinig iad an stèisean? An robh e duilich?

Nach robh mi aig an taigh Di-Luain? Nach cuala mi fuaim shuas an staighre? Nach deach mi suas? Nach fhaca mi meàirleach? Nach do rinn e bùrach? Nach duirt mi: 'Có thusa?'? Nach dàinig am Poileas agus nach do rug iad air a' mheàirleach? Nach d'fhuair am meàirleach buille? Nach dug e an t-airgead air ais? Nach do ràinig iad an stèisean? Nach robh e duilich?

**Exercise 2:** 1 Bha mi toilichte. 2 Chunnaic mi Anna an-dé. 3 Chaidh Iain a-mach. 4 Thàinig iad a-steach/a-staigh. 5 Chuir sinn seachad bliadhna an-sin. 6 Cha do rinn thu an obair agad. 7 An d'fhuair thu an t-airgead? 8 Nach do ràinig thu Dùn Éideann fhathast? 9 Cha duirt i sion. 10 Chuala mi Màiri an-raoir.

**Exercise 3:** 1 Òl an ti agad. 2 Ith an dinnear agad. 3 Seas (suas). 4 Suidh (sios). 5 Bi sàmhach. 6 Thigibh a-steach/a-staigh. 7 Thoir sin do Sheumas. 8 Na dèan(aibh) sion. 9 Faigh e an-diugh. 10 Dùn an doras mas e do thoil e.

**Exercise 4:** 1 a Dhonnchaidh. 2 a Mhairead. 3 a Mhìcheil. 4 a Mhurchaidh. 5 a Shine.

#### LESSON 5

**Exercise 1:** 1 Tha Iain 'na chadal. 2 Am bheil thu 'nad dhùisg. 3 Tha Màiri 'na laighe/'na sineadh. 4 Bha e 'na sheasamh an-sin. 5 Tha iad 'nan suidhe.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Se ministear a tha ann an Iain. 2 Se seinneadair a tha ann an Anna. 3 Se tidsear a tha ann an Seonag. 4 Se croitear a tha ann an Uilleam. 5 Se oileanach a tha ann an Domhnall. 6 Se oileanach a tha annam cuideachd. 7 Se dotalair a tha innte. 8 Se borbair a tha annaibh. 9 An e tidsear a tha annaibh/annad? 10 An e ministear a tha ann?

**Exercise 3:** (a) (Is/)Se sinne a chuala Anna a' seinn aig a' chéilidh an-raoir. (b) Se Anna a chuala sinn a' seinn aig a' chéilidh an-raoir. (c) Sann a' seinn a chuala sinn Anna aig a' chéilidh an-raoir. (d) Sann aig a' chéilidh a chuala sinn Anna a' seinn an-raoir. (e) Sann an-raoir a chuala sinn Anna a' seinn aig a' chéilidh. (f) Sann a chuala sinn Anna a' seinn aig a' chéilidh an-raoir.

**Exercise 4:** 1 I like Gaelic. 2 She prefers John. 3 Would you prefer beer? 4 Would you like a cup of tea? 5 They don't prefer brown bread. 6 Doesn't Ann like dancing? 7 I don't like meat. 8 I would prefer beer to whisky. 9 Do you like Run Rig? 10 Would you not prefer pibroch?

**Exercise 5:** 1 ann an taigh. 2 air bòrd. 3 le duine. 4 tro bhaile. 5 ro Sheumas. 6 bho àm gu àm. 7 a dh'Inbhir Nis. 8 á Dùn Éideann/bho Dhùn Éideann. 9 aig geata. 10 fo chàr.

#### LESSON 6

**Exercise 1:** 1 aig an doras. 2 anns an t-seòmar. 3 leis a' bhalach. 4 dhan a' chaileig. 5 ron a' chéilidh. 6 leis an airgead. 7 anns a' chàr. 8 anns a' Bheurla. 9 fo chrao(i)bh. 10 tron a' bhaile.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Dhùin Seumas an uinneag. 2 Choisich Anna dhachaigh. 3 Cheannaich Màiri am páipear. 4 Dh'òl Catriona an ti aice. 5 Sheinn Iain òran. 6 Leugh Calum am páipear. 7 Dh'innis e dhomh. 8 Dh'ionnsaich mi (a') G(h)àidhlig. 9 Dh'ith i aran. 10 Ruith Uilleam agus dhùin e an doras.

**Exercise 3:** 1 Có a dhùin an doras? 2 Cuine a chaidh iad a-mach? 3 Càite an do chuir thu an iuchair? 4 Cha do dh'innis mi dha. 5 An do chòrd an céilidh riut? 6 Leugh mi an leabhar sin nuair a bha mi òg. 7 Fàg e far an d'fhuair thu e. 8 (Se) sin an duine a sheinn aig a' chéilidh. 9 Chan fhaca mi Seumas ma bha e ann. 10 Thàinig e ged a bha e sgith.

#### LESSON 7

**Exercise 1:** 1 mac an t-sagairt. 2 dath an t-sneachd. 3 mullach a' chnuic. 4 doras na sgoile. 5 piuthar mo bhràthar. 6 iuchair an taighe. 7 càr mo pheathar. 8 biadh a' chait. 9 athair Sheumais. 10 leabhar Catriona.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Tha sinn a' falbh an-diugh. 2 Am bheil iad a' tighinn? 3 Có a tha a' seinn? 4 Chan eil iad ag éisteachd. 5 Bha sinn ag ithe agus ag òl. 6 An robh thu ag obair an-diugh? 7 Tha i ag òl na ti. 8 Tha iad a' ceannach an leabhair. 9 Tha mi a' fosgladh an dorais. 10 Tha i a' dùnadh na h-uinneig(e).

**Exercise 3:** 1 air mo chùlaibh. 2 air do bheulaibh. 3 os a chionn. 4 ri a taobh. 5 as ar n-aonais. 6 coltach riutha. 7 comhla rium. 8 timcheall oirnn. 9 seachad air. 10 chun an dorais.

## LESSON 8

**Exercise 1:** 1 Òlaidh Anna an ti aice. 2 Ionnaichidh mi (a') G(h)àidhlig. 3 Cuine a sheinneas tu an t-òran? 4 Cha cheannaich i aran geal uair sam bith. 5 Am falbh iad gu moch anns a' mhadainn? 6 Bruidhnidh mi ris ma thilleas e. 7 Càite am fag sinn an t-airgead? 8 Có a chuidicheas mi? 9 Leughaidh mi am pàipear nuair a dhùisgeas mi. 10 Ciamar a dhùineas tu an doras?

**Exercise 2:** 1 na caileagan agus na balaich. 2 anns na bailtean. 3 fo na bùird. 4 bho na Gàidheil. 5 air na cnuic. 6 tidsearan nan sgoiltean. 7 leabharachean nam balach. 8 cànan nan Gàidheal. 9 airgead nam boireannach. 10 an deidh nan oidhcheannan.

**Exercise 3:** (a) trì uinneagan. (b) deich sgoiltean. (c) seachd caileagan. (d) dà chlas. (e) ochd craobhan. (f) dà chàr dheug. (g) còig pioban deug. (h) ochd òrain d(h)eug. (i) dà chois. (j) dà uinneig/uinneag dheug.

**Exercise 4:** 1 Am bheil thu gam chluinntinn? 2 Am bheil sibh ga fhaincinn? 3 Tha Iain gan coinneachadh. 4 An robh na balaich gur bualadh? 5 Có a tha gar n-iarraidh? 6 Bha Anna gad fhaighneachd. 7 Tha mi ga fhreagairt an-dràsta. 8 Am bheil thu gar fagail an-seo? 9 Am bheil thu ga ceannach? 10 Bha iad ga sheinn.

## LESSON 9

**Exercise 1:** 1 Chan abair (cha chan) mi sìon ris. 2 Dé a bheir thu do bhean an taighe? 3 An cluinn thu na h-eòin a' seinn? Am bheil thu a' cluinntinn nan eun a' seinn? 4 An dèan thu an obair air mo shon/dhomh? 5 Am faigh iad na lathaichean saora aca/an lathaichean saora a-màireach? 6 Chi sinn iad nuair a ruigeas iad Glaschu. 7 An déid do bhràthair dhan a' chéilidh? 8 Cha dig iad dhachaigh dìreach an deidh na sgoile. 9 Gheibh e an trèan nuair a thig e. 10 An dèan thu do dhìcheall an uair seo a Iain?

**Exercise 2:** 1 An aithne dhut am balach a thilg a' chlach? 2 Sin am boireannach a sheinn an t-òran brèagha ud an-raoir. 3 Càite am bheil an leabhar nach do leugh thu? 4 Seo an seòmar anns an do dh'fhàg mi an

iuchair. Seo an seòmar a dh'fhàg mi an iuchair ann. 5 An e sin am boireannach dhan an do dh'innis thu an naidheachd? An e sin am boireannach a dh'innis thu an naidheachd dhi? 6 Is toil leam an sgioba leis an do chluich mi. Is toil leam an sgioba a chluich mi leis. 7 An toil leat an ceòl ris an robh Domhnall ag éisteachd? An toil leat an ceòl a bha Domhnall ag éisteachd ris? 8 An rathad mun an robh sinn a' bruidhinn? An rathad a bha sinn a' bruidhinn mu a dheidhinn? 9 An e sin an duine ris an do thachair thu? An e sin an duine a thachair thu ris? 10 An aithne dhut am fear lagha a fhuair a mhac an ceum aige an-uiridh?

**Exercise 3:** 1 leis a' chat bheag. 2 air a' bhòrd gheal. 3 dhan a' chaileig mhóir. 4 anns an t-solas gheal. 5 dath na deise ùire. 6 faclan an òrain bhrèлага. 7 ceòl na pioba-móire. 8 cosgais a' chamara dhaoir. 9 leis a' chàraid laghaich. 10 air an rathad cheàrr.

**Exercise 4:** *Vigesimal:* (a) dà fhichead leabhar is a còig. (b) trì fichead each is a sia deug. (c) ceithir fichead séithear is a seachd. (d) naoi bliadhna deug ar fhichead a dh'aois. (e) trì fichead bliadhna is a dhà a dh'aois. (f) trì fichead bliadhna is a deich a dh'aois.

**Decimal:** (a) ceathrad is a còig leabhar/ceathrad leabhar is a còig. (b) seachdad is a sia each/seachdad each is a sia. (c) ochdad is a seachd séithear/ochdad séithear is a seachd. (d) trithead is a naoi bliadhna a dh'aois/trithead bliadhna is a naoi a dh'aois. (e) seasgad is a dhà bliadhna a dh'aois/seasgad bliadhna is a dhà a dh'aois. (f) seachdad bliadhna a dh'aois.

## LESSON 10

**Exercise 1:** 1 Cha chuirinn suas ri sin. 2 Cuine a dhùisgeadh tu anns a' mhadainn? 3 Carson a chreideadh Iain sin? 4 Nigheadh iad iad fhéin anns an abhainn. 5 Lorg/fhuair sinn àite far an gabhadh sinn anail. 6 Chan iteadh/cha ghabhadh iad greim. 7 Cha ghabhainn ach druthag bheag. 8 Am postadh tu an litir seo dhomh/air mo shon? 9 Thuigeadh iad cuid mhath dheth gu dearbh. 10 Dh'fhosglann an doras dhut/air do shon nam biodh fios agam gun robh thu ann.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Theirinn/chanainn gum bheil Iain nas sine na Màiri. 2 Nam biodh an t-side na b'fheàrr, shuidheadh sinn a-muigh. 3 Dh'innis mi dhut gum buinigeadh tu an duais a bu mhotha. 4 Bha Uilleam ag obair anns an Òban nuair a bha e na b'òige. 5 Se Seumas (an duine) as sine anns an teaghlach. 6 Tha e nas fhaga nuair a tha an sgian nas géire. 7 Tha Peigi nas treasa na Ailean ged a tha i nas lugha na e. 8 Sin a' chraobh as àirde a chunnaic mi riamh. 9 Tha a' Ghàidhlig cho doirbh ris a' Bheurla. 10 Chan eil an tidsear cho beairteach ris an fhear-lagha.

**Exercise 3:** Thuirt Iain gun robh e a-muigh an-raoir. John said that he was out last night. 2 Chuala mi gun dàinig Seumas. I heard that James came. 3 An rud a chunnaic mi. The thing which I saw. 4 An naidheachd a chuala tu. The news which you heard. 5 Thuirt Anna gur h-e ministear a tha ann. Ann said that he is a minister. 6 Tha mi a' smaoineachadh gur h-e co-latha breith Sheumais a tha ann an-diugh. I think that it is James' birthday today. 7 Leugh mi gur h-ann an-diugh a thachair e. I read that it was today that it happened. 8 Tha iad a' ràdh gur h-ann air a' Ghàidhealdachd a bha iad a' fuireach. They say that it was in the Highlands that they lived.

**Exercise 4:** 1 caileagan òga. young girls. 2 an fheadhain gheala. the white ones. 3 cait dhubha. black cats. 4 clasaichean móra. big classes. 5 balaich mhodhail. (well-)behaved boys. 6 daoine làidir. strong men/people. 7 bùird ghlana. clean tables. 8 pàistean matha. good children. 9 leabhrachaean inntinneach. interesting books. 10 boireannaich bheirteach. rich women.

## LESSON 11

**Exercise 1:** 1 Is toil leam ithe. 2 Feumaidh mi falbh. 3 Bu toil leis cuideachadh. 4 Tha i ag iarraidh bruidhinn. 5 Bha e a' dol a thighinn. 6 Thàinig i a choimhead. 7 Tha dùil aca fuireach anns an Òban. 8 Bu chòir dhut a dhol gu Baile Àtha Cliath. Tha còir agad a dhol gu Baile Àtha Cliath. 9 Nach eil thu a' dol a dh'éisteachd? 10 Is urrainn do Pheigi snàmh.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Feumaidh mi an obair agam a dhèanamh. 2 Is urrainn dhi Gàidhlig a bhruidhinn. 3 Bu chòir dhut càr ùr a cheannach. 4 Tha Iain ag iarraidh leabhar a sgrìobhadh. 5 Is fheàrr dhut an doras a dhùnadhl nad dheidh. 6 Cha b'urrainn dhuinn an dotair a phàigheadh. 7 Tha sinn a' dol a dh'fhaighinn bainne. 8 Thàinig Anna a thogail a mic. 9 Tha cuimhne aig Domhnall air an leabhar sin a leughadh. 10 B'urrainn do Pheigi Gàidhlig a bhruidhinn.

**Exercise 3:** 1 Is toil leis a ithe. 2 Bha dùil aig Anna a sheinn aig a' chéilidh. 3 Bha an t-eagal air Iain a tarraing. 4 Tha aig na balaich òga ri an glanadh. 5 Chaidh Calum ga coimhead. 6 Is fheàrr le Màiri a teagasc. 7 Bu chòir dhut ar creidsinn. 8 Tha Anna a' dol gan dùsgadh. 9 Bu toil leinn do chuideachadh. 10 Tha cuimhne aig Seumas air sin a ràdh.

**Exercise 4:** 1 Tha Raibeart direach air falbh. 2 Tha Seonag air a thighinn. 3 Tha Iain air an litir a sgrìobhadh. 4 Tha e air cuideam a chur air. 5 Tha iad air a dhol a-mach. 6 Bidh Màiri air tòiseachadh anns an oilthigh an ath sheachdain. 7 Tha Anna air an seann taigh a reic mu dheireadh. 8 Bhiodh Seumas air Gàidhlig a ionnsachadh. 9 Tha Iain air cus a ithe mar-thà. 10 An deidh do Niall an t-eòlas gu léir a chruinneachadh.

## LESSON 12

**Exercise 1:** 1 Bhinn glé thoilichte nan digeadh iad. 2 Dh'òladh e ti ceart gu leòr. 3 Chitheadh iad an cairdean/na cairdean aca aig an sgoil. 4 Rachadh sinn dhan an taigh-t(h)asgaidh a h-uile mìos. 5 Chan fhaigheadh tu suidhechan air a' phléan a-nis. 6 An abradh tu/an canadh tu gun rachadh Iain dhan an dealbhchluich? 7 Am faigheadh tu am bus aig a' chùil sin? 8 Bheireadh tu air an aiseag mu dheireadh aig naoi uairean. 9 Cha chluinneadh tu a leithid sin ann an àite sam bith eile. 10 Cha doireadh màthair Dhomhnaill cead dha a dhol a-mach.

**Exercise 2:** 1 Seinnear an t-òran. 2 Dh'fhosgladh an uinneag. 3 Leagadh an seann taigh. 4 Caillear airgead a h-uile bliadhna. 5 Leanadh Iain dhachaigh an-dé. 6 Nighte e a h-uile latha. 7 Chan fhacas is cha chualas an t-eun bhon an t-seachdain seo a chaidh. 8 Theirear/canar gun robh e a' fuireach ann an Dùn Éideann nuair a bha e na b'òige/nas òige. 9 Mharbhadh e feadh na h-oidhche. 10 Rugadh is thogadh mi an Éirinn.

## Index

The numbers refer to sections, *not* pages.

- Ability 65
- Adjectives: 81, 81a; feminine 16; masculine 16; position 16, 16ii; demonstrative 22a; comparative 89, 90; superlative 89; prepositional 81b; with genitive 81c; irregular 90; plural 92
- Adverbs: 8; of direction 24; of quantity 60; of frequency 64a, 64c
- Age 82b
- 'air' 45
- Answering questions 6, 29, 41, 66, 75, 85c, 102a
- Article: use of 14, 14a; nominative forms 14; plural 68b; with genitive 57b; double definite 58
- Asking questions 6, 8a, 9a, 19, 22c, 39
- 'to be' 2
- 'because' 67a
- Case in Gaelic 13
- Colours (following Section 100)
- Conditional 85, 85a, 85b, 85c, 86, 86b, 102, 107
- Conditional perfect 98c
- Conjunctions 67, 67a, 91, 91a, 91b
- Counting: decimal/vigesimal system 82, 82a, 101
- Countries 84
- Dates 101
- Days of the week 25
- 'de' ('of') 83
- Defective verbs 94, 111
- Definite article 14, 14a, 15
- Definite nouns 20
- Demonstratives: 22; adjectives 22a; adverbs 22c; pronouns 22b
- Dependent verbal forms 27a, 51, 52, 64, 64a, 85a, 108
- Dislikes 45(b)
- 'do' ('to/for'): 32; + verb 50
- Dual number 71a
- 'duine' 73
- Emphatic pronouns 9
- Emphatic suffixes 26
- 'ever' 51a, 67b
- 'every' 56
- Expressing dislikes 45(b)
- Expressing likes/preferences 42c(ii)/(iii)
- Fronting (word order) 40

Future perfect 98b  
 Future tense: 64, 64b, 64, 65, 67, 67a, 67b,  
 75, 76, 107; 64a (regular verbs); 74  
 (irregular verbs)  
 Gender 11  
 Genitive 57, 57a, 57b, 58, 61, 68a, 68b, 68c,  
 81c, 83  
 Greetings 8a  
 'gu (preposition) + verbal noun' 100  
 'to have' 4; 'I only have' 7  
 'I don't mind/it doesn't matter to me' 42c(iv)  
 'I like/I would like' 42c(ii)  
 'I prefer', 'I would prefer' 42c(iii)  
 Identification 21  
 Idioms 32a, 35a  
 'if' ('ma'/'nan') 86, 86a, 86b; 'an' 88  
 'if it were not' 87a  
 'if not' ('mura') 87  
 Immediate perfect 98d  
 Imperative 30, 30a, 30b, 111  
 Impersonal verbal forms 107, 108  
 Indefinite nouns 3, 36  
 Independent verbal forms 27a, 48, 52, 64, 85,  
 108  
 Infinitives 95, 95a, 95b, 96, 96a, 97; objects of  
 95a, 95b, 95c  
 Interjections 45(c), 112  
 Interrogatives 79  
 Inversion 95c  
 Irregular verbs: simple past tense 28; future  
 74; 'is' (to be) 10, 21, 36;  
 negative/interrogative of 10b; past tense 31;  
 conditional 102; relative 80, 80a  
 'it is' 36b  
 'to know' 4b, 32b  
 'last' 54b  
 'le': prepositional pronoun 42b; idioms with  
 42c  
 Lenition 1, 9, 10, 11  
 Modal verbs 94  
 Months of the year 25  
 'never' 51a, 67b  
 'next' 54b  
 Nouns: definite 20; indefinite 3; irregular  
 plurals 70  
 Numerals: 23, 82, 82a, 93; cardinals; ordinals  
 101; with nouns 71; personal 93  
 Objects of verbs 95a, 96, 96a  
 'only' 51b  
 Ownership 42, 42a, 42b, 57a  
 Passive 109  
 Past participles and perfective 105  
 Past tense 37, 51, 107, 111 (regular verbs); 48  
 (irregular verbs)

Perfect 98  
 Periphrastic construction 4, 27, 61, 64a, 98  
 Pluperfect 98a  
 Plural 68, 68a, 68b, 68c, 70, 111  
 Prepositional case 46  
 Prepositional pronouns 4a, 32, 42b, 45, 49,  
 112, 195  
 Prepositions: 35, 44, 47, 77b, 100; composite  
 62; + genitive 62a; + nominative; before  
 article 69; with verbal noun 61; with  
 interrogative 79; 'annan' ('in') 35; with  
 relative 77b; 'de' ('of') 83  
 Present tense: 18, 111; use in future 76  
 Pronouns: 1, 12; prepositional 4a, 15(ii), 45;  
 emphatic 9; personal 15, 21, 64b;  
 possessive 15; demonstrative 96a; reflexive  
 34, 91; pron. objects 62a  
 Regular verbs: past tense (indep.) 48; future  
 tense 64, 64a; conditional/past habitual 85,  
 85a  
 Relative forms: 77, 77a, 77b, 77c, 78, 80, 80a;  
 rel. clause 53, 77a, 77c; of verb 'is' 80, 80a  
 Reported speech 91, 111  
 'Ri': + noun 99; + verb 50  
 'Same' 16(iii)  
 'Se' 21, 36a  
 Seasons of the year 25  
 'should' 32c  
 Slenderisation 6, 7, 9, 10, 11  
 'some': 55, 55a (indef. pron. some  
 people/things)  
 Subject 21, 22b, 28, 77  
 Subjunctive: 110  
 Surnames 59  
 'te' ('one') 12  
 'tha' ('to be'): 2; negative/interrogative of 5;  
 past tense 27, 27b; future 64; conditional  
 85b; + 'aig' (to have) 4; + 'fios'; + 'aig'  
 4b; 'tha' v. 'is'; auxiliary 18  
 'thank you' 42c(i)  
 'that' 91  
 'there is/are' 3  
 'this is/that is' 38  
 Time 54, 54a, 54b, 63  
 'too' 16(iii)  
 'usually' 103  
 Verb + preposition 50  
 'used to' 104  
 Verbal noun 17, 72; + genitive 61; with  
 pronoun object 72; after 'ni' 99  
 'very' 16(iii)  
 Vocative 33  
 Weather 43  
 'who?' v. 'who' 53

## Mini-dictionary

### Gaelic–English

a (*ppn*) her  
 á (*prp*) from, out of  
 a particle used before numerals  
 when counting  
 a (*rel pn*) that, which  
 a\* (*ppn*) his  
 abair (*vb*) say  
 abhainn (*f*) river, aibhne (*G*),  
 aibhnichean (*pl*)  
 àbhaist (*f*) customary state  
 a-bhos (*adv*) over here (location at  
 speaker)  
 ach (*cjn*) but  
 acras (*m*) hunger  
 actair (*m*) actor, actairean (*pl*)  
 ad (*f*) hat, adaichean (*pl*)  
 a dh'athghearr (*adv*) soon  
 adhar (*m*) sky  
 adhbhar (*m*) reason, adhbhair (*pl*)  
 agus (*cjn*) and  
 a h-uile every  
 aig (*prp*) at  
 Ailean (*m*) Allan  
 aimsir (*f*) weather, aimsirean (*pl*)  
 ainm (*m*) name, ainmean,  
 ainmeannan (*pl*)  
 ainmeil (*adj*) famous  
 air (*prp*) on  
 airgead (*m*) money  
 airson (*cd prp*) for (the sake of)  
 (followed by *G*)  
 aiseag (*m*) ferry, aiseagan (*pl*)  
 àite (*m*) place, àiteachan,  
 àitichean (*pl*)  
 aithne (*f*) knowledge  
 aithneachadh (*vn*) recognising,  
 knowing  
 aithních (*vb*) recognise, know  
 alainn (*adj*) beautiful  
 Alba (*f*) Scotland  
 àm (*m*) time, amannan (*pl*)  
 a-mach (*adv*) out, outwards  
 (motion)  
 a-màireach (*adv*) tomorrow  
 am bliadhna (*adv*) this year  
 a-muigh (*adv*) out (location)  
 an etc. (*art*) the  
 an/m (*interr prt pos*)  
 a-nall (*adv*) over here (motion  
 towards speaker)  
 an comhnaidh (*adv*) always  
 an-dé (*adv*) yesterday  
 an-diugh (*adv*) today  
 an-dràsta (*adv*) now  
 a-nis, nis (*adv*) now  
 anmoch (*adv*) late  
 ann (*adv*) there  
 ann an (*prp*) in  
 Anna (*f*) Ann  
 a-nochd (*adv*) tonight  
 a-nuas (*adv*) down, downwards; up,  
 upwards (towards the speaker)  
 a-null (*adv*) over there (motion  
 away from speaker)  
 a-null thairis (*adv*) abroad  
 (motion to)  
 an-raoir (*adv*) last night  
 an-seo (*adv*) here  
 an-sin (*adv*) there  
 an-siud (*adv*) there, yonder  
 an toiseach (*adv*) first  
 aodach (*m*) cloth, clothes,  
 aodaichean (*pl*)  
 aodann (*m*) face, aodainnean (*pl*)  
 aois (*f*) age, aoisean (*pl*)  
 aon (*num*) one

aon\* (*adj*) one, same  
**aonan** (*m*) one  
**ar** (*ppn*) our  
**aran** (*m*) bread, **arain** (*pl*)  
**àrd** (*adj*) high  
**àrdsgoil** (*f*) secondary school,  
  **àrdsgoiltean** (*pl*)  
**a-rithist** (*adv*) again  
**arsa** (*def vb*) says, said  
**a-staigh** (*adv*) in, inside (location)  
**a-steach** (*adv*) in, inwards (motion)  
**ath\*** (*adj*) next  
**athair** (*m, irr*) father, **athraichean** (*pl*)  
**atharrachadh** (*vn*) changing  
**atharraich** (*vb*) change

**baga** (*m*) bag, **bagaichean** (*pl*)  
**baile** (*m*) town(ship), **bailtean** (*pl*)  
**bainne** (*m*) milk, **bainneachan** (*pl*)  
**balach** (*m*) boy, **balaich** (*pl*)  
**balgam** (*m*) mouthful, **balgaman** (*pl*)  
**ball-coise** (*m*) football  
**balla** (*m*) wall, **ballachan** (*pl*)  
**bàn** (*adj*) fair (of hair)  
**banca** (*m*) bank, **bancaichean** (*pl*)  
**bàrd** (*m*) poet, **bàird** (*pl*)  
**bàrdachd** (*f*) poetry  
**bas** (*f*) palm, **boisean** (*pl*)  
**basaidh** (*m*) basin, **basaidhean** (*pl*)  
**basgaid** (*f*) basket, **basgaidean** (*pl*)  
**bàta** (*m*) boat, **bàtaichean** (*pl*)  
**beachd** (*m*) opinion, **beachdan** (*pl*)  
**beag** (*adj*) small  
**beagan** (*m*) a little, a small  
  amount/number  
**beairteach** (*adj*) rich  
**Bealltainn** (*f*) May (Day)  
**bean** (*f, irr*) wife, **mnathan** (*pl*)  
**beannachd** (*m*) blessing,  
  **beannachdan** (*pl*)  
**beannachd leibh** goodbye  
  (*pl or formal*)  
**beinn** (*f, irr*) mountain, **beanntan** (*pl*)  
**beir** (*air*) (*vb*) take hold, catch, bear  
**bed** (*adj*) alive  
**Beurla** (*f*) English

(a) **bhith** (*inf*) being, to be  
**bho\*** (*prp*) from; (*cjn*) since  
**bho chionn** (*cjn*) since  
**bi** (*vb*) be  
**biadh** (*m*) food, **bidhe** (*G*),  
  **bidheannan** (*pl*)  
**blas** (*m*) taste  
**blàs** (*m*) warmth  
**blasda** (*adj*) tasty  
**blàth** (*adj*) warm  
(a') **B(h)liadhna Ùr** (*f*) New Year  
**bó** (*f*) cow, **bà** (*pl*) (rare: **crodh**  
  (*m, coll*), more common as *pl*)  
**bodach** (*m*) old man, **bodaich** (*pl*)  
**boin** (*vb*) belong to, relate to  
**boireannach** (*m*) woman,  
  **boireannaich** (*pl*)  
**borbair** (*m*) barber, **borbairean** (*pl*)  
**bòrd** (*m*) table, **bùird** (*pl*)  
**bracaist** (*m*) breakfast,  
  **bracaistean** (*pl*)  
**bradan** (*m*) salmon, **bradain** (*pl*)  
**bràthair** (*m, irr*) brother,  
  **bràithrean** (*pl*)  
**breac** (*m*) trout, **bric** (*pl*)  
**breac** (*adj*) speckled  
**breith** (*vn*) taking hold, catching,  
  bearing  
**brèagha** (*adj*) lovely, fine  
**brist** (*vb*) break  
**bristeadh** (*vn*) breaking  
**bròg** (*f*) shoe, **brògan** (*pl*)  
**brònach** (*adj*) sad  
**brot** (*m*) soup  
**bruidhinn** (*ri*) (*vb*) speak (to)  
**bu, b'** past & conditional of is  
  b'aithne do knows  
  bu chaomh le would like  
  bu toil le would like  
  b'urrainn do could  
**buail** (*vb*) strike  
**bualadh** (*vn*) striking  
**buidhe** (*adj*) yellow  
**builich** (*vb*) grant, bestow, confer  
**buinig** (*vb*) win  
**buinigeadh** (*vn*) winning

**bunsgoil** (*f*) primary school,  
  **bunsgoiltean** (*pl*)  
**buntàta** (*m, coll*) potatoes  
**bùrach** (*m*) mess  
**bus** (*m*) bus, **busaichean** (*pl*)  
**bùth** (*f*) shop, **bùthan**, **bùithntean** (*pl*)  
**cabhag** (*f*) hurry  
**cabhsair** (*m*) pavement,  
  **cabhsairean** (*pl*)  
**cadal** (*m*) sleep  
(a') **C(h)àisg** (*f*) Easter  
**caileag** (*f*) girl, **caileagan** (*pl*)  
**cailleach** (*f*) old woman,  
  **cailleachan** (*pl*)  
**cairteal** (*m*) quarter, **cairtealan** (*pl*)  
**caisteal** (*m*) castle, **caistealan** (*pl*)  
**càite** (*interr pn*) where?  
**call** (*m*) loss, pity  
**Calum** (*m*) Calum  
**can** (*ri*) (*vb*) say to  
**cànan** (*m*) language, **cànanan** (*pl*)  
**cantainn, cantail** (*vn*) saying  
**caoin** (*vb*) cry  
**caoineadh** (*vn*) crying  
**caora** (*f*) sheep, **caoraich** (*pl*)  
**càr** (*m*) car, **càraichean** (*pl*)  
**caraid** (*m*), friend, relative,  
  **càirdean** (*pl*)  
**càrn** (*m*) cairn, **càirn, càirn**, **cùirn** (*pl*)  
**cas** (*f*) foot, leg, **casan** (*pl*)  
**cat** (*m*) cat, **cait** (*pl*)  
**cathair** (*f*) chair; city **cathraichean** (*pl*)  
**Catriona** (*f*) Catherine  
**cead** (*m*) permission  
**ceann** (*m*) head, **cinn** (*pl*)  
**ceann-suidhe** (*m*) president,  
  **cinn-s(h)uidhe** (*pl*)  
**ceannach** (*vn*) buying  
**ceannaich** (*vb*) buy  
**ceàrr** (*adj*) wrong  
**ceart gu leòr** (*adv*) all right, OK  
**ceasnaiche** (*m*) interviewer,  
  **ceasnaichean** (*pl*)  
**ceathrar** (*m*) four people  
**céiliche** (*m*) visitor, **céilichean** (*pl*)  
**céilidh** (*m, f*) ceilidh, dance, social  
  visit, **céilidhean** (*pl*)  
**ceist** (*f*) question, **ceistean** (*pl*)  
**Céitean** (*m*) May, **Céiteannan** (*pl*)  
**ceithir** (*num*) four  
**ceòl** (*m*) music  
**ceòl-mór** (*m*) pibroch  
**ceum** (*m*) step, degree,  
  **ceumannan** (*pl*)  
**cha(n)** (*neg prt*) not  
**cho** as  
**chun** (*prp*) to (followed by G)  
**ciamar** (*a*) how?  
**clach** (*f*) stone, **clachan** (*pl*)  
**cladach** (*m*) shore, **cladaichean** (*pl*)  
**clann** (*f, coll*) children  
**clas** (*m*) class, **clasaichean** (*pl*)  
**cli** (*adj*) left  
**cluas** (*f*) ear, **cluasan** (*pl*)  
**cluich** (*vb, vn*) play(ing)  
**cluinn** (*vb*) hear  
**cluinntinn** (*vn*) hearing  
**cnoc** (*m*) hill, **cnuic** (*pl*)  
**có** (*a*) who?  
**cùil** (*f*) corner, **cùiltean** (*pl*)  
**co-dhiubh** (*adv*) anyway, however  
**co-dhiubh** (*cjn*) whether  
**cofaidh** (*m*) coffee  
**coibhneil** (*adj*) kind  
**cóig** (*num*) five  
**cóignear** (*m*) five people  
**coille** (*f*) wood, **coiltean** (*pl*)  
**coinneachadh** (*vn*) meeting  
**coinneamh** (*m*) meeting,  
  **coinneamhan** (*pl*)  
**coinnich** (*vb*) meet  
**còir** (*f*) right  
**coiseachd** (*vn*) walking  
**coisich** (*vb*) walk  
**colaiste** (*f*) college, **colaistean** (*pl*)  
**co-latha breith** (*m*) birthday  
**có mheud** how many?  
**coltach ri** (*cd prp*) like  
**coltas** (*m*) appearance, **coltais** (*pl*)  
**comharradh** (*m*) sign,  
  **comharraighean** (*pl*)

comhfhurtail (*adj*) comfortable  
 comhla ri (*cd prp*) along with  
 comhlan ciùil (*m*) band (of music)  
 companach (*m*) companion,  
 companaich (*pl*)  
 còrd ri (*vb*) enjoy (accord with)  
 còrdadh ri (*vn*) enjoying,  
 (according with)  
 cosgais (*f*) cost, cosgaisean (*pl*)  
 còta (*m*) coat, còtaichean (*pl*)  
 cothrom (*m*) chance,  
 cothroman (*pl*)  
 craobh (*f*) tree, craobhan (*pl*)  
 creach (*f*) plunder, ruin, ruination,  
 creachan (*pl*)  
 mo chreach (*interj*) alas  
 creid (*vb*) believe  
 creidsinn (*vn*) believing  
 croitear (*m*) crofter, croitearan (*pl*)  
 cruaidh (*adj*) hard  
 cruinneachadh (*vn*) gathering  
 cruinnich (*vb*) gather  
 cù (*m, irr*) dog, coin (*pl*)  
 cuideachadh (*vn*) helping  
 cuideachd (*adv*) also  
 cuid-eiginn (*m*) somebody, someone  
 cuidich (*vb*) help  
 cuimhne (*f*) memory  
 cuine (*a*) when?  
 cuingichte (*adv*) restricted, limited to  
 cuir (*vb*) put, send  
 cùirt (*f*) court, cùirtean (*pl*)  
 cum (*vb*) keep  
 cumail (*vn*) keeping  
 cupa (*m*) cup, cupannan (*pl*)  
 cur (*vn*) putting, sending  
 cursa (*m*) course, cùrsaichean (*pl*)  
 cus (*adv*) too much, too many  
 (very many)  
 cuspair (*m*) subject, cuspairean (*pl*)  
 dà\* (*num*) two, a dhà  
 (when counting)  
 dachaigh (*f*) home, dachaighean (*pl*)  
 dad nothing (in neg and *interr*  
 sentences)

Damhair (*m*) October,  
 Damhairean (*pl*)  
 damhan-allaidh (*m*) spider,  
 damhain-allaidh (*pl*)  
 dannsa (*m*) dance, dannsaichean (*pl*)  
 dannsa (*vn*) dancing  
 dath (*m*) colour, dathan (*pl*)  
 de (*prp*) of  
 dé (*a*) (*interr pn*) what?  
 deagh\* (*adj*) good (precedes noun)  
 dealbh (*f, m*) picture, dealbhannan,  
 deilbh (*pl*)  
 dealbhchluich (*f*) drama,  
 dealbhchluichean (*pl*)  
 dèan (*vb*) do, make  
 dèanamh (*vn*) doing, making  
 dearbh\* (*adj*) very  
 dearg (*adj*) (bright) red  
 deas (*adj*) right, south  
 deich (*num*) ten  
 deichnear (*m*) ten people  
 deigh (*f*) ice.  
 deireadh (*m*) end  
 deise (*f*) suit, deiseachan (*pl*)  
 dhachaigh (*adv*) home(wards)  
 deiseil (*adj*) ready  
 deoch (*f*) drink, dighe (*G, irr*),  
 deochannan (*pl*)  
 dian (*adj*) intense, hard  
 Diar-Daoin Thursday  
 Di-Ciadaoin Wednesday  
 Di-Domhnaich Sunday v Latha na  
 Sàbaid  
 Di-hAoine Friday  
 dileas (*adj*) loyal  
 Di-Luain Monday  
 Di-Màirt Tuesday  
 dinnear (*f*) dinner, dinnearan (*pl*)  
 direach (*adj*) just, straight  
 Di-Sathairne Saturday  
 dithis (*f*) two people  
 do\* (*ppn*) your  
 do\* (*prp*) to, for  
 do-dhèante (*adj*) impossible  
 doirbh (*adj*) difficult  
 dòirt (*vb*) pour

dol (*vn*) going  
 Domhnall (*m*) Donald  
 dona (*adj*) bad  
 donn (*adj*) brown  
 doras (*m*) door, doorway, dorais,  
 dorsan (*pl*)  
 dorcha (*adj*) dark  
 dòrtadh (*vn*) pouring  
 dragh (*m*) worry, draghannan (*pl*)  
 dotair (*m*) doctor, dotairean (*pl*)  
 draibh (*vb*) drive  
 draibheadh (*vn*) driving  
 dram(a) (*m*) dram (drink),  
 dramaichean, dramannan (*pl*)  
 dràma (*m*) drama  
 dreuchd (*f*) post, job, office,  
 dreuchdan (*pl*)  
 droch\* (*adj*) bad (precedes noun)  
 duais (*f*) prize, reward, duaisean (*pl*)  
 dualchainnt (*f*) dialect,  
 dualchainntean (*pl*)  
 dubh (*adj*) black  
 Dubhlachd (*f*) December,  
 Dubhlachdan (*pl*)  
 duilich (*adj*) sorry; hard, difficult  
 duilleag (*f*) leaf, duilleagan (*pl*)  
 dùin (*vb*) close  
 duine (*m*) man, person, daoine (*pl*)  
 dùisg (*vb*) waken  
 Dùn Éideann (*m*) Edinburgh  
 dùnadhbh (*vn*) closing  
 dùsgadh (*vn*) wakening  
 dùthaich (*f*) country, district, land,  
 dùthchannan (*pl*)  
 each (*m*) horse, eich (*pl*)  
 eachdraidh (*f*) history,  
 eachdraidhean (*pl*)  
 eagal (*m*) fear  
 eaglais (*f*) church, eaglaisean (*pl*)  
 Earrach (*m*) Spring, Earraich (*pl*)  
 -eiginn some v rud-eiginn,  
 cuid-eiginn  
 eile (*adj*) other, else  
 eilean (*m*) island, eileanan (*pl*)  
 Éirinn (*f*) Ireland

éist (*vb*) listen  
 éisteachd (*vn*) listening  
 esan (*pn*) he  
 eugh (*vb*) shout  
 eughachd (*vn*) shouting

fa leth particular, singly, separately  
 fada (*adj*) long  
 fag (*vb*) leave  
 fagail (*vn*) leaving  
 faic (*vb*) see  
 faicinn (*vn*) seeing  
 faigh (*vb*) get  
 faighinn (*vn*) getting  
 faighneachd (*vn*) asking  
 faighnich (*de*) (*vb*) ask  
 (information of)  
 faireachdáinn (*vn*) feeling  
 fairich (*vb*) feel  
 faisg (*air*) (*prp*) near, close (to)  
 falamh (*adj*) empty  
 falbh (*vb, vn*) go(ing) away  
 falt (*m*) hair  
 faod (*def vb*) may  
 Faoilteach (*m*) January, Faoiltich (*pl*)  
 far (*prp*) off (followed by G)  
 far an where, the place that  
 fas (*vb, vn*) grow(ing)  
 feadh (*prp*) during, throughout  
 feadhain (*f*) some (people or things)  
 feannag (*f*) crow, feannagan (*pl*)  
 fear (*m*) man, fir (*pl*)  
 fear (*pn*) one, feadhain (*f, coll used*  
 for *pl*)  
 fear-lagha (*m*) lawyer, fir-lagha (*pl*)  
 feasgar (*m*) evening, feasgair (*pl*)  
 feòil (*f*) meat  
 feuch (*ri*) (*vb*) see; make sure, try  
 feuchainn (*ri*) (*vn*) making sure,  
 trying  
 feum (*def vb*) must  
 feur (*m*) grass  
 fhathast (*adv*) yet  
 fhéin self  
 fiadh (*m*) deer, féidh (*pl*)  
 fichead (*m*) twenty, ficheadan (*pl*)

fidheall (*f*) fiddle, fidhlean (*pl*)  
 fidhlear (*m*) fiddler, fidhlearan (*pl*)  
 fiadh (*m*) wood  
 fion (*m*) wine  
 fios (*m*) knowledge  
 fiosrachadh (*m*) information  
 firinn (*f*) truth  
 flìuch (*adj*) wet  
 fo\* (*prp*) under  
 foghain (*vb*) suffice  
 Foghar (*m*) Autumn, Foghair (*pl*)  
 foghlaimte (*adj*) learned, educated  
 fogham (*m*) education  
 foillseachadh (*vn*) publishing,  
     revealing  
 foillsich (*vb*) publish, reveal  
 fón (*m*) phone  
 fón (*vb*) phone  
 fónadh (*vn*) phoning  
 fosgail (*vb*) open  
 fosgladh (*vn*) opening  
 Fraingeis (*f*) French  
 fraoch (*m*) heather  
 freagairt (*f*) reply, answer,  
     freagairtean (*pl*)  
 freagarrach (*adj*) suitable  
 fuadaichean (*pl*) Clearances  
 fuaim (*m*) sound, fuaimean (*pl*)  
 fuar (*adj*) cold  
 fuil (*f*) blood  
 fuireach (*vn*) living (in), staying  
 fuireach ri (*vn*) waiting for  
 fuirich (*vb*) live (in), stay  
 fuirich ri (*vb*) wait for  
 furasta (*adj*) easy  
  
 gabh (*vb*) take; eat  
     gabh (*vb*) mo lethsgeul  
         excuse me  
     gabh (*vb*) òran sing a song  
 gabhairl (*vn*) taking; eating  
 gach every  
 Gàidheal (*m*) Gael, Gàidheil (*pl*)  
 Gàidhealdachd (*f*) Highlands  
 Gàidhlig (*f*) Gaelic  
 Gall (*m*) Lowlander, Goill (*pl*)

Galldachd (*f*) Lowlands  
 gaol (*m*) love  
 garails (*f*) garage,  
     garaidsean (*pl*)  
 geal (*adj*) white, bright  
 geama (*m*) game,  
     geamaichean (*pl*)  
 geamair (*m*) gamekeeper,  
     geamairean (*pl*)  
 Geamhradh (*m*) Winter,  
     Geamhráidhean (*pl*)  
 (a') G(h)earmailt (*f*) Germany  
 Gearmailtis (*f*) German  
 geàrr (*adj*) short  
 geàrr (*vb*) cut  
 gearradh (*vn*) cutting  
 Gearran (*m*) February,  
     Gearrain (*pl*)  
 geata (*m*) gate, geataichean (*pl*)  
 ged (*a*) (*cjn*) although  
 ged-ta however  
 geug (*f*) branch, twig, geugan (*pl*)  
 geur- (*adj*) sharp  
 Giblean (*m*) April, Gibleanan (*pl*)  
 gille (*m*) boy, gillean (*pl*)  
 ginealach (*m*) generation,  
     ginealaich(ean) (*pl*)  
 glan (*adj*) clean; fine, nice  
 glas (*adj*) grey, grey-green  
 glas (*vb*) lock  
 Glaschu (*f*) Glasgow  
 glasraich (*f*) vegetables  
 gle\* very  
 gleusta (*adj*) canny, prudent  
 glic (*adj*) clever, wise  
 gloine (*f*) glass, gloineachan (*pl*)  
 gobha (*m*) smith, goibhnean (*pl*)  
 goid (*vb*) rob, steal  
 goirid (*adj*) short  
 goirt (*adj*) sore  
 gòrach (*adj*) silly, foolish  
 gorm (*adj*) blue  
 greas (*vb*) hurry up  
     greas ort (you) hurry up!  
 grian (*f*) sun  
 grunn (*m*) a good deal, a lot

gu (*prp*) to, to the point of  
     gu bràch (*adv*) ever  
     gu bràch tuilleadh evermore  
 gu dearbh (*adv*) indeed  
 gu dòigheil (*adv*) fine  
 gu dona (*adv*) badly  
 gu leir (*adv*) completely  
 gu leòr (*adv*) plenty  
 gu luath (*adv*) quickly  
 gu math (*adv*) well  
 gu mì-fhortanach (*adv*)  
     unfortunately  
 gu snog (*adv*) nicely  
 gu sonraighe (*adv*) especially  
 gun(\*) (*prp*) without  
 gun (*cjn*) that  
 gu ruige (*prp*) to  
 gus (*prp*) until  
 guth (*m*) voice, guthan (*pl*)  
  
 i (*pn*) she  
 iad (*pn*) they  
 Iain (*m*) John  
 iarr (*vb*) ask, request, want  
 iarraidh (*vn*) asking, requesting,  
     wanting  
 iasg (*m*) fish, éisg (*pl*)  
 iasgach (*m*) fishing  
 idir (*adv*) at all  
 im (*m*) butter  
 innis (*do*) (*vb*) tell (to)  
 innse (*vn*) telling  
 inntinneach (*adj*) interesting  
 ionnsachadh (*vn*) learning  
 ionnsaich (*vb*) learn  
 is (*def vb*) is  
     is athine do know  
         (of person)  
     is beag air dislike  
     is caingeis le it doesn't matter to  
     is caomh le likes  
     is dòcha probably, perhaps  
     is toil le likes  
     is urrainn do can  
 ise (*pn*) she  
 iséal (*adj*) low  
 ith (*vb*) eat  
 ithe (*vn*) eating  
 iuchair (*f*) key, iuchraichean (*pl*)  
 Iuchar (*m*) July, Iuchair (*pl*)  
  
 lag (*adj*) weak  
 lagaich (*vb*) weaken  
 lagachadh (*vn*) weakening  
 lagh (*m*) law, laghannan (*pl*)  
 làdir (*adj*) strong  
 laigh (*vb*) lie down  
 laighe (*vn*) lying down  
 làmh (*f*) hand, làmhan (*pl*)  
 lär (*m*) floor, làir (*pl*)  
 latha (*m*) day, lathaichean (*pl*)  
 Latha na Sàbaid Sunday v Di-  
     Domhnaich  
 lathaichean saora (*pl*) holidays  
 le (*prp*) with  
 leabaidh (*f, irr*) bed, leapannan (*pl*)  
 leabhar (*m*) book, leabhraichean (*pl*)  
 leabharlann (*m*) library,  
     leabharlannan (*pl*)  
 leag (*vb*) knock down, fell  
 leagail (*vn*) knocking down, felling  
 lean (*vb*) follow  
 leantainn, leantail (*vn*) following  
 leig (*vb*) let, allow  
 leigeil (*vn*) letting, allowing  
 léine (*f*) shirt, léintean (*pl*)  
 lethphint (*m*) half-pint,  
     lethphìnntean (*pl*)  
 lethsgeul (*m*) excuse, lethsgeulan (*pl*)  
 lethuair (*f*) half-hour, lethuairean (*pl*)  
 leudachadh (*vn*) expanding  
 leudaich (*vb*) expand  
 leugh (*vb*) read  
 leughadh (*vn*) reading  
 liath (*adj*) (light) blue, grey  
 lion (*vb*) fill  
 lionn (*m*) beer, lionntan (*pl*)  
 litir (*f*) letter, litrichean (*pl*)  
 litreachas (*m*) literature  
 loch (*m*) lake, lochan (*pl*)  
 luath (*adj*) fast, swift  
 Lùnastal (*m*) August, Lùnastail (*pl*)

ma (*cjn*) if  
 mac (*m*) son, mic (*pl*)  
 madainn (*f*) morning, madainnean,  
 maidnean (*pl*)  
 mair (*vb*) last, endure  
 Mairi (*f*) Mary  
 manaidsear (*m*) manager,  
 manaidsearan (*pl*)  
 mar (*prp*) as, like  
 mar sin leibh goodbye to you  
 (*pl* or *formal*)  
 Màrtainn (*m*) Martin  
 mar-tha (*adv*) already  
 Màrt (*m*) March, Màirt (*pl*)  
 mas e do thoil e please, lit if it is  
 your wish  
 math (*adj*) good  
 ma-tha then!  
 màthair (*f*) mother, màthraichean (*pl*)  
 meadhan (*m*) middle,  
 meadhanan (*pl*)  
 meadhanach (*adj*) middling  
 meàirleach (*m*) robber, meàirlich (*pl*)  
 meal (*vb*) enjoy  
 meal do naidheachd congratulations  
 mear (*adj*) merry  
 mi-fhortanach (*adj*) unfortunate  
 mi (*pn*) I  
 mile (*m*) thousand, mìltean (*pl*)  
 milis (*adj*) sweet  
 mìn (*adj*) smooth  
 ministear (*m*) minister,  
 ministearan (*pl*)  
 mionaid (*f*) minute, mionaidean (*pl*)  
 mìos (*m, f*) month, mìosan (*pl*)  
 miosail air fond of  
 mo\* (*ppn*) my  
 modh cainnte (*m*) mode of  
 speaking  
 modh (*m*) good manners, politeness  
 modhail (*adj*) well-behaved, polite  
 mol (*vb*) praise  
 moladh (*vn*) praising  
 mór (*adj*) big  
 Mórag (*f*) Morag  
 móran (*m*) much, many

mu (*prp*) about  
 mu dheidhinn (*prp*) about,  
 concerning (followed by G)  
 mu dhereadh (*adv*) last  
 muillean (*m*) million, muilleanan (*pl*)  
 muir (*f*) sea, marannan (*pl*)  
 mura (*cjn*) if not  
 mus (*cjn*) before  
 na (*pn*) what, that which  
 nach (*interr* *prt* neg etc.)  
 naidheachd (*f*) news,  
 naidheachdan (*pl*)  
 naoi (*num*) nine  
 naonar (*m*) nine people  
 neoini (*m*) nothing, zero  
 nigh (*vb*) wash  
 nighe (*vn*) washing  
 nighean (*f*) daughter,  
 nigheanan (*pl*)  
 nis (*adv*) now  
 no (*cjn*) or  
 nochd (*vb*) appear  
 nochdadadh (*vn*) appearing  
 nuair (a) (*cjn*) when, the time that  
 nurs (*f*) nurse, nursaichean (*pl*)  
 obair (*f*), work, obraichean (*pl*)  
 (an t-) Òban (*m*) Oban  
 ochd (*num*) eight  
 ochdnar (*m*) eight people  
 òg (*adj*) young  
 Ògmhìos (*m*) June, Ògmhìosan (*pl*)  
 oidhche (*f*) night,  
 oidhcheannan (*pl*)  
 Oidhche Challainn (*f*) Hogmanay,  
 New Year's Eve  
 Oidhche Shámhna (*f*) Halloween  
 oifigeach (*m*) officer, official,  
 oifigich (*pl*)  
 oifis (*f*) office, oifisean (*pl*)  
 oilleanach (*m*) student,  
 oilleanach (*pl*)  
 oilthigh (*m*) university,  
 oilthighean (*pl*)  
 ól (*vb, vn*) drink(ing)

orains (*m*) orange-juice  
 orainsear (*m*) orange,  
 orainsearan (*pl*)  
 òran (*m*) song, òrain (*pl*)  
 ospadal (*m*) hospital, ospadail (*pl*)  
 pailteas (*adv*) enough  
 pàipear (*m*) paper, pàipearan (*pl*)  
 pàipear-naidheachd (*m*) newspaper,  
 pàipearan-naidheachd (*pl*)  
 pàirc (*f*) park, pàircean (*pl*)  
 Paras (*m*) Paris  
 pàrlamaid (*f*) parliament,  
 pàrlamaidean (*pl*)  
 pàrtaidh (*m*) party, pàrtaidhean (*pl*)  
 pathadh (*m*) thirst  
 peann (*m*) pen, pinn (*pl*)  
 peant (*m*) paint, peantaichean (*pl*)  
 Peigi (*f*) Peggy  
 peitean (*m*) jumper, peiteean (*pl*)  
 pinc (*adj*) pink  
 plèan (*m*) plane, plèanaichean (*pl*)  
 pint (*m*) pint, pinntean (*pl*)  
 piob (*f*) pipe, pioban (*pl*)  
 piobaire (*m*) piper, piobairean (*pl*)  
 pìos (*m*) piece  
 piuthar (*f, irr*) sister,  
 peathraichean (*pl*)  
 pòg (*f*) kiss, pògan (*pl*)  
 poileas (*m*) police, poileis (*pl*)  
 port-adhair (*m*) airport,  
 puirt-adhair (*pl*)  
 pòs (*vb*) marry  
 pòsadh (*vn*) marrying  
 post (*m*) postman, postaichean,  
 puist (*pl*)  
 priosanach (*m*) prisoner,  
 priosanaich (*pl*)  
 prògram (*m*) programme,  
 prògraman (*pl*)  
 rach (*vb*) go  
 ràdh (*vn*) saying  
 Raghnall (*m*) Ronald  
 rannsachadh (*vn*) (re)searching  
 rannsaich (*vb*) (re)search

rathad (*m*) road, rathaidean,  
 rothaidean (*pl*)  
 ré (*prp*) during (followed by G)  
 redòite (*adj*) frozen  
 reul (*m*) star, reultan (*pl*)  
 ri (*prp*) to, for etc.  
 riamh (*adv*) ever  
 ro, roimh (*prp*) before  
 ro\* too  
 ruadh (*adj*) (darker) red  
 rud-eiginn (*m*) something  
 ruig (*vb*) reach, arrive at  
 ruigsinn, ruighinn (*vn*) reaching,  
 arriving at  
 rùisg (*vb*) peel  
 ruith (*vb, vn*) run(ning)  
 rùsgadh (*vn*) peeling  
 sagart (*m*) priest, sagairt (*pl*)  
 salach (*adj*) dirty  
 salann (*m*) salt  
 sam bith any, at all  
 sàmhach (*adj*) quiet  
 Samhain (*f*) November,  
 Samhainean (*pl*)  
 Samhradh (*m*) Summer,  
 Samhraidhean (*pl*)  
 saoil (*vb*) wonder  
 saor (*adj*) free  
 Sasainn (*f*) England  
 seachd (*num*) seven  
 seachdain (*f*) week,  
 seachdainean (*pl*)  
 seachdnar (*m*) seven people  
 seall (*vb*) look, show  
 sean (*adj*) old  
 seann\* (*adj*) old (precedes noun)  
 seas (*vb*) stand  
 seasamh (*vn*) standing  
 seinn (*vb, vn*) sing(ing)  
 seinneadair (*m*) singer,  
 seinneadairean (*pl*)  
 seòrsa (*m*) type, seòrsaicéan (*pl*)  
 sedòltá (*adj*) cunning, clever  
 seòmar (*m*) room, seòmraichean (*pl*)  
 Seumas (*m*) James

sgadan (*m*) herring, sgadain (*pl*)  
 sgeilp (*f*) shelf, sgeilpichean (*pl*)  
 sgeul (*m*) sign, news, story,  
   sgeòil (*pl*)  
 sgeulachd (*f*) story,  
   sgeulachdan (*pl*)  
 sgian (*f, irr*) knife, sgeinean (*pl*)  
 sgilling (*f*) penny, sgillingean (*pl*)  
 sgiobalta (*adj*) tidy, neat, deft  
 sglos (*m*) tiredness  
 sgith (*adj*) tired  
 sgoil (*f*) school, sgoiltean (*pl*)  
 sgriob (*f*) trip, sgrioban (*pl*)  
 sgriobh (*vb*) write  
 sgriobhadh (*vn*) writing  
 sguir (*vb, vn*) cease, stop  
 sia (*num*) six  
 sianar (*m*) six people  
 sibh (*pn*) you (*pl*), you (*sg, formal*)  
 side (*m, f*) weather  
 sin (*vb*) stretch (out)  
 sineadh (*vn*) stretching (out)  
 sinn (*pn*) we  
 siol (*m*) seed, sil (*pl*)  
 sion (*m*) a particle, a small bit  
   sion (*m*) anything  
     (in *interr* and *neg* sentences and in  
       phrase a h-uile sion everything)  
 shios (*adv*) down (location)  
 shuas (*adv*) up (location)  
 sionnach (*m*) fox, sionnaich (*pl*)  
 sios (*adv*) down, downwards  
     (motion away from speaker)  
 siubhad (*def vb*) go on, continue  
 siúcar (*m*) sugar  
 siuga (*m*) jug, siugaichean (*pl*)  
 slàinte (*f*) health, slàintean (*pl*)  
 smaoineachadh, smaointinn (*vn*)  
     thinking  
 smaoinich (*vb*) think  
 smoc (*vb*) smoke (of tobacco)  
 snàmh (*vb, vn*) swim  
 sneachd (*m*) snow, sneachdannan (*pl*)  
 snog (*adj*) nice  
 solas (*m*) light, solais (*pl*)  
 sonraichte (*adj*) especial

speal (*f*) scythe, spealan (*pl*)  
 sporan (*m*) purse, sporain,  
   sporannan (*pl*)  
 spreadh (*vb*) burst  
 spreadhadh (*vn*) bursting  
 sràid (*f*) street, sràidean (*pl*)  
 sreap (*vb, vn*) climb(ing)  
 sròn (*f*) nose, srònán (*pl*)  
 staighre (*f*) stair, staighriclean (*pl*)  
 steidhichte (*adj*) established  
 stèisean (*m*) station, stèiseanan (*pl*)  
 stiall ort (*vb*) on you go, continue  
 suas (*adv*) up, upwards (motion  
     away from speaker)  
 suidh (*vb*) sit down  
 suidhe (*vn*) sitting down  
 suidheachan (*m*) seat,  
   suidheachain, suidheachanan (*pl*)  
 sùil (*f*) eye, sùilean (*pl*)  
 Sultain (*f*) September, Sultainean (*pl*)  
 suiteas (*m, coll*) or suiteis (*pl*) sweets  
 suitidh (*m*) sweet

tachair (*vb*) happen  
 tachair ri (*vb*) meet (with)  
 tachairt (*vn*) happening  
 tachairt ri (*vn*) meeting (with)  
 tadhail air (*vb*) visit (on)  
 tadhail air (*vn*) visiting (on)  
 tagh (*vb*) choose, elect, select  
 taghadh (*m*) election, electing  
 taghadh-pàrlamaid (*m*)  
     parliamentary election  
 taigh (*m*) house, taighean (*pl*)  
 taigh-beag (*m*) toilet,  
   taighean-beaga (*pl*)  
 taigh-òsta (*m*) hotel, pub,  
   taighean-òsta (*pl*)  
 taigh-tasgaidh (*m*) museum,  
   taighean-tasgaidh (*pl*)  
 taingeil thankful  
 taobh (*m*) side, taobhan (*pl*)  
 tapadh leat thank you (*informal*)  
 tapadh leibh (*pl or formal*)  
 tarraing (*vb, vn*) pull(ing)  
 tarsainn (air) (*prp*) across

té (*f, pn*) woman; one, feadhain  
   (*f, coll* used for *pl* of 'one')  
 teagaistg (*vb*) teach  
 teagamh (*m*) doubt, teagamhan (*pl*)  
 teagastg (*vn*) teaching  
 teaghlaich (*m*) family,  
   teaghlaichean (*pl*)  
 teanga (*f*) tongue, teangannan (*pl*)  
 teann (*adj*) tight  
 Teàrlach (*m*) Charles  
 teich (*vb*) escape, flee  
 teicheadh (*vn*) escaping, fleeing  
 teine (*m*) fire, teintean (*pl*)  
 telebhisean (*m*) television  
 teth (*adj*) hot  
 tha (*vb*) is  
 thall (*adv*) over there (location not  
     at speaker)  
 thall thairis (*adv*) abroad (location)  
 theab (*def vb*) almost  
 thig (*vb*) come  
 thoir (*do*) (*vb*) give, bring (to)  
 thoir gaol do (*vb*) love  
 t(h)u (*pn*) you  
 tì (*f*) tea  
 tidsear (*m*) teacher, tidsearan (*pl*)  
 tighinn (*vn*) coming  
 tilg (*vb*) throw  
 tilgeil (*vn*) throwing  
 till (*vb*) return  
 tilleadh (*vn*) returning  
 timcheall air (*cd prp*) around  
 tinn (*adj*) sick  
 tiocaid (*f*) ticket, tiocaidean (*pl*)  
 fir-mór (*m*) mainland  
 t(h)iugainn, thugainn (*def vb*)  
     come along, let's go  
 tiugh (*adj*) thick  
 tog (*vb*) lift, build  
 togail (*vn*) lifting, building

toilichte (*adj*) happy  
 toirt (*do*) (*vn*) giving, bringing (to)  
 toll (*m*) hole, tuill (*pl*)  
 toll-iuchrach (*m*) keyhole,  
   tuill-iuchrach (*pl*)  
 tòrr (*m*) a lot, torran (*pl*)  
 trèan (*f*) train, trèanaichean (*pl*)  
 trì (*num*) three  
 tric (*adv*) often  
 triùir (*m*) three people  
 tro, troimh (*prp*) through  
 trobadh (*def vb*) come along  
 trom (*adj*) heavy  
 truinnsear (*m*) plate,  
   truinnsearan (*pl*)  
 tuig (*vb*) understand  
 tuigsinn (*vn*) understanding  
 tuil (*f*) flood, tullean (*pl*)  
 tuilleadh (*m*) more  
 tuit (*vb*) fall  
 tuiteam (*vn*) falling  
 turas (*m*) trip, journey, turais,  
   tursan (*pl*)

uabhasach (*adj, adv*) terrible;  
     terribly; very much (intensifier)  
 uaine (*adj*) green  
 uair one o'clock  
 uan (*m*) lamb, uain (*pl*)  
 uasal (*adj*) high, noble  
 ugh (*m*) egg, uighean (*pl*)  
 uile (*adj*) all  
 Uilleam (*m*) William  
 uinneag (*f*) window, uinneagan (*pl*)  
 uinnean (*m*) onion, uinneanan (*pl*)  
 uisge (*m*) water, uisgeachan (*pl*)  
 uisge-beatha (*m*) whisky  
 ur (*ppn*) your (*pl* and *sg, formal*)  
 ùr (*adj*) new  
 Ùrlar (*m*) floor, Ùrlair (*pl*)

## Abbreviations used in Mini-dictionary

<i>adj</i>	adjective	<i>neg</i>	negative
<i>adv</i>	adverb	<i>num</i>	numeral
<i>art</i>	article	<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>cd prp</i>	compound preposition	<i>pn</i>	pronoun
<i>cjn</i>	conjunction	<i>pos</i>	positive
<i>coll</i>	collective	<i>ppn</i>	possessive pronoun
<i>def</i>	defective	<i>prp</i>	preposition
<i>f</i>	feminine	<i>prt</i>	particle
<i>G</i>	genitive	<i>rel</i>	relative
<i>inf</i>	infinitive	<i>sg</i>	singular
<i>interj</i>	interjection	<i>v</i>	vide, see
<i>interr</i>	interrogative	<i>vb</i>	verb
<i>irr</i>	irregular	<i>vn</i>	verbal noun
<i>m</i>	masculine	*	lenites following word

### Picture Credits

Jacket: All special photography Joe Cornish, Paul Harris, Karl Shone, Clive Streeter except CORBIS (UK): Neil Beer bottom left; Paul Thompson centre right above; STILL MOVING PICTURE COMPANY: Angus Johnston centre right below; Scottish Tourist Board top left and centre below

**hugo**

# SCOTTISH GAELIC

---

## *in THREE MONTHS*

**YOUR ESSENTIAL GUIDE TO UNDERSTANDING  
AND SPEAKING SCOTTISH GAELIC – FAST!**

Hugo's world-renowned method is designed  
to give you a full working knowledge of Scottish  
Gaelic in double-quick time



- Essential grammar is simply explained
- Model sentences, key phrases and word lists build up your vocabulary
- Short exercises based on real-life scenarios reinforce what you've learnt
- Conversation drills help you practise your speaking skills
- Pronunciation is made easy with Hugo's unique "imitated pronunciation" system, which represents Scottish Gaelic sounds with English syllables
- Includes a mini Scottish Gaelic–English dictionary

Make learning even easier and more fun – ask your bookseller for Hugo's *Scottish Gaelic Cassette Course*, which comes with two audio cassettes as well as this book



DORLING  
KINDERSLEY  
[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

ISBN 0-85285-369-6



£5.95

9 780852 853696 >